

Project Manual
Book 2 of 3

New Facility
Boys and Girls Clubs of Greater Cincinnati
Price Hill Teen Center & Offices

Glenway Ave. / Cincinnati, Ohio 45205

For
Boys and Girls Clubs of Greater Cincinnati
600 Dalton Ave.
Cincinnati, Ohio 45203

Issued for Bidding: February 2024



ARCHITECT:
Emboss Design, P.S.C.
906 Monmouth Street
Newport, KY 41071
Phone: (859) 431-8612

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME 1

Division	Section Title	Pages
----------	---------------	-------

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING DOCUMENTS GROUP

EXHIBITS & ATTACHMENTS

000102	Table of Contents	5
	Exhibit A – List of Drawings	2

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

002113	Instructions to Bidders	1
	AIA A701 Instructions to Bidders – Sample	8
002213	Supplementary Instructions to Bidders	2
006000	Project Forms	1

SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

General Requirements

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000	Summary	9
012300	Alternates	2
012500	Substitution Procedures	4
012600	Contract Modification Procedures	2
012900	Payment Procedures	5
013100	Project Management and Coordination	10
013200	Construction Progress Documentation	9
013300	Submittal Procedures	10
014000	Quality Requirements	8
014200	References	7
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls	9
016000	Product Requirements	5
017300	Execution	9
017700	Closeout Procedures	6
017823	Operation And Maintenance Data	7
017839	Project Record Documents	4
017900	Demonstration And Training	3

VOLUME 2

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

033000 Cast-In-Place Concrete 21

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

042000 Unit Masonry 21

047200 Cast Stone Masonry 6

DIVISION 05 - METALS

051200 Structural Steel Framing 10

052100 Steel Joist Framing 4

053100 Steel Decking 7

054000 Cold-Formed Metal Framing 8

055000 Metal Fabrications 8

055113 Metal Pan Stairs 4

055213 Pipe and Tube Railings 7

057300 Decorative Metal Railings 8

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

061000 Rough Carpentry 6

061600 Sheathing 5

064116 Plastic-Laminate-Faced Architectural Cabinets 8

066400 Plastic Paneling 3

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

071326 Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing 5

071919 Silicone Water and Graffiti-Resistant Treatments 4

072100 Thermal Insulation 4

072119 Foamed-In-Place Insulation 2

072500 Weather Barriers 2

072726 Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers 7

074113.16 Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels 10

074213.13 Formed Metal Wall Panels 8

074293 Soffit Panels 7

075323 Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing 10

076200 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim 9

077100 Roof Specialties 8

077200 Roof Accessories 5

077253 Snow Guards 3

078413 Penetration Firestopping 6

078443 Joint Firestopping 5

079200 Joint Sealants 9

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

081113 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 9

081416 Flush Wood Doors 5

083113 Access Doors And Frames 3

083613 Sectional Doors 8

084113 Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts 9

087100	Door Hardware	11
088000	Glazing	9
DIVISION 09 - FINISHES		
092216	Non-Structural Metal Framing	7
092900	Gypsum Board	7
093013	Ceramic Tiling	8
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings	6
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories	6
096519	Resilient Tile Flooring	4
096723	Resinous Flooring	7
096813	Tile Carpeting	5
099113	Exterior Painting	6
099123	Interior Painting	8
DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES		
101100	Visual Display Units	6
101419	Dimensional Letter Signage	5
101423	Panel Signage	6
102113	Toilet Compartments	4
102600	Wall And Door Protection	4
102800	Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories	4
104413	Fire Protection Cabinets	4
104416	Fire Extinguishers	3
105300	Manufactured Hanger Rod Canopies	4
DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS		
122413	Roller Window Shades	4
123661.16	Solid Surfacing Countertops	4
DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT		
142123.16	Machine Room-Less Electric Traction Passenger Elevators	8
DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK		
311000	Site Clearing	4
312000	Earth Moving	12
DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS		
321216	Asphalt Paving	7
321313	Concrete Paving	13
321373	Concrete Paving Joint Sealants	4
321411	Modular Retaining Wall System	6
321723	Pavement Markings	2
321726	Tactile Warning Surfacing	4
321813	Synthetic Grass Surfacing	6
323113	Vinyl Fencing and Gates	3
329113	Soil Preparation	9
329200	Turf And Grasses	8
DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES		
334600	Subdrainage	4

VOLUME 3

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

220516	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.12	BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.14	CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
221116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
221119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
221316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
221319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
221600	FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING
224213.13	COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
224213.16	COMMERCIAL URINALS
224216.13	COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
224216.16	COMMERCIAL SINKS
224716	PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

DIVISION 23 – HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

230100	GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC
230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
230713	DUCT INSULATION
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION
230800	COMMISSIONING OF HVAC
230923	DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC
230993.11	SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC DDC
232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING
233113	METAL DUCTS
233116	NONMETAL DUCTS
233119	HVAC CASINGS
233300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
233423	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
233600	AIR TERMINAL UNITS
233713	DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
237433	ROOFTOP UNITS
238239.19	ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

260000	GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS
260519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
260526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260544	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
260553	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

262416	PANELBOARDS
262726	WIRING DEVICES
262813	FUSES
262816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
265100	INTERIOR LIGHTING
265600	EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS

270500	BASIC COMMUNICATIONS REQUIREMENTS
270525	FIRESTOPPING
270526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
270528	PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
270802	DOCUMENTATION AND CLOSE OUT FOR TECH & SECURITY SYSTEMS
271100	COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS
271513	COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING
274000	MEDIA COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
275116	PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEMS

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

280520	BASIC SECURITY MATERIALS AND METHODS
280526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR SECURITY SYSTEMS
280528	SECURITY SYSTEMS PATHWAYS AND SUPPORT EQUIPMENT
281300	ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT
281500	ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES
281600	INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM
282100	VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CAMERAS

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
 - 1. Footings.
 - 2. Foundation walls.
 - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Suspended Slabs
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for Abrasive-Blast Finish alternate pertaining to exposed foundation walls in this section.
 - 2. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
 - 3. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete curbs and walks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Joint Layout: Indicate proposed control joints, expansion joints, and construction joints required to construct the structure.
 - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

E. Samples:

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Form materials and form-release agents.
4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
5. Curing compounds.
6. Bonding agents.
7. Adhesives.
8. Vapor retarders.

B. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.

1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.

D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

E. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:

1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

F. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

- G. Preconstruction Testing of Water Repellents: Installed water repellents shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports based on Project-specific pre-application testing of existing substrate assemblies by a qualified testing agency.
1. Select sizes and configurations of assemblies to adequately demonstrate capability of water repellents to comply with performance requirements.
 2. In addition to verifying performance requirements, use test applications to verify manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure and optimum rates of product application to substrate assemblies.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when assemblies will be tested.
- H. Mockups: Cast concrete formed-surface panels with abrasive-blast finish to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, and standard of workmanship. Provide up to two batches of concrete to demonstrate the number of required mockups.
1. Formed Surfaces: Build panel in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
1. ACI 301.
 2. ACI 117.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- D. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations:
 - 1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
 - 2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
 - 3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
 - 4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I, gray.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
 - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.

- F. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M, including all limits listed in Table 2 and the requirements of paragraph 5.4

2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A; not less than 10 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Barrier-Bac; Inteplast Group.](#)
 - b. [Poly-America, L.P.](#)
 - c. [Stego Industries, LLC.](#)
 - d. [W.R. Meadows, Inc.](#)

2.7 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.

2.8 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 or aromatic polyurea with a Type A shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95 per ASTM D 2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:

1. Types I and II, nonload bearing and Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.9 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Use admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Normal-weight concrete used for footings, grade beams, and tie beams.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0, S0, W0, C0.
 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi or as indicated at 28 days.
 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
 4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch or as permitted under ACI 301, based on ASTM C143.
- B. Normal-weight concrete used for below grade foundation walls.
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0, S0, W0, C0.
 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi or as indicated at 28 days.
 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
 4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch or as permitted under ACI 301, based on ASTM C143.
- C. Normal-weight concrete used for above grade foundation walls.
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F1, S0, W0, C1.
 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi or as indicated at 28 days.
 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
 4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch or as permitted under ACI 301, based on ASTM C143.
 5. Air Content:
 - a. Exposure Class F1: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0, S0, W0, C0.
 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi or as indicated at 28 days.
 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
 4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 540 lb/cu. yd..
 5. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch or as permitted under ACI 301, based on ASTM C143.
 6. Air Content:
 - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.
 7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 1.00 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Normal-weight concrete used for interior suspended slabs.
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0, S0, W0, C0.
 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi or as indicated at 28 days.
 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
 4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 540 lb/cu. yd..
 5. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch or as permitted under ACI 301, based on ASTM C143.
 6. Air Content:
 - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.

- F. Normal-weight concrete used for interior metal pan stairs and landings:
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0, S0, W0, C0.
 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psis indicated at 28 days.
 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.53.
 4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd..
 5. Maximum Size Aggregate: 1/2 inch.
 6. Slump Limit: 3 inches, plus 1 inch or minus 2 inches.
 7. Air Content: 0 percent, plus or minus 0.5 percent at point of delivery.
 8. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 1.00 percent by weight of cement.
 9. Retarding Admixture: Not allowed.
 10. Accelerating Admixture: Not allowed.

2.12 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.13 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 2. Class C, 1/2 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
 - 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 SHORES AND RESHORES

- A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
 - 1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
- B. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
 - 2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
 - 3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than 6 inches, sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
 - 4. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
 - 5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
 - 6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
 - 7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
 - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by 6 inches on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
 - 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

3.7 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
 - 1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
 - 2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.

- a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
 5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 7. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
 2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- 3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT
- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
 2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.

- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
 - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
 - 1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
 - 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - 4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301.
 - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
 - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
 - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
 - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
 - 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
 - 6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
 - 8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and

defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view unless otherwise indicated.

C. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Apply the following to as-cast surface finishes of exposed foundations:

1. Perform abrasive blasting after compressive strength of concrete exceeds 2000 psi.
2. Coordinate with formwork removal to ensure that surfaces to be abrasive blasted are treated at the same age.
3. Surface Continuity:
 - a. Perform abrasive-blast finishing as continuous operation, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work.
 - b. Maintain required patterns or variances in depths of blast to match mockups.
4. Abrasive Blasting:
 - a. Abrasive-blast corners and edges of patterns carefully, using backup boards to maintain uniform corner and edge lines.
 - b. Determine type of nozzle pressure and blasting techniques required to match field sample.
 - c. Depth of Cut: Use an abrasive grit of proper type and gradation to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces to match field sample, as follows:
 - 1) Brush Texture: Remove cement matrix to dull surface sheen and expose face of fine aggregate, with no significant reveal.
 - d. Maintain required patterns or variances in reveal projection to match mockups.

D. Related Unformed Surfaces:

1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated.
- C. Float Finish:
1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
 2. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117 tolerances for conventional concrete.

3. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
 4. Do not use steel finishing tools at exterior air entrained slabs. Magnesium floats are acceptable.
- D. Trowel Finish:
1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
 2. Continue troweling passes and restraighthen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
 3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
 5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
 6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
 7. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, in accordance with ASTM E1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Slabs on Ground:
 - 1) For floor areas less than 10,000SF: Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.-long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 3/16 inch.
 - 2) For floor areas greater than 10,000SF: Specified overall values of flatness, F_F 35; and of levelness, F_L 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F_F 24; and of levelness, F_L 17.
 - b. Suspended Slabs:
 - 1) For floor areas less than 10,000 SF: Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.-long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 3/16 inch.
 - 2) For floor areas greater than 10,000 SF: Specified overall values of flatness, F_F 35; and of levelness, F_L 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F_F 24; and of levelness, F_L 15.
- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
1. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
 2. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
 2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Equipment Bases and Foundations:

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
2. Construct concrete bases 4 inches high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than 6 inches in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.
3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
 - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
 - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

C. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

3.12 CONCRETE CURING

A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

1. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
2. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations.

B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:

1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:
 - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.

- b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
- c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
- d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
- e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
 - 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:

- 1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
- 2. Interior Concrete Floors:
 - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
 - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
 - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12-inches.
 - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
 - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
 - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
 - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
 - a) Water.
 - b) Continuous water-fog spray.

3.13 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117.

3.14 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s).

2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete:

- 1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
- 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

- 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete.

- a. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch.
- b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
- c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
- d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
- e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.

- 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.

- a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
- b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

- 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.

D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:

- 1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.

- a. Correct low and high areas.
- b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

- 2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that

- penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
 - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
 - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
 - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
 - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around.
 - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
 - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
 - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 8. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar.
 - a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
 - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
 - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.
- 3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.

B. Inspections:

1. Headed bolts and studs.
2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.

C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
 - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
 - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete;.
 - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
 - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two 6-inch by 12-inch or 4-inch by 8-inch cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
 - a. Test one cylinder of two laboratory-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days. Hold the fourth cylinder for testing at 56 days.
7. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi, or no

compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi.

9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
10. Additional Tests:
 - a. Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
 - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
 - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength shall be in accordance with ACI 301 section 1.6.6.3.
11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.17 PROTECTION

A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:

1. Protect from petroleum stains.
2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Decorative concrete masonry units.
3. Clay face brick.
4. Mortar and grout.
5. Steel reinforcing bars.
6. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
7. Ties and anchors.
8. Embedded flashing.
9. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
10. Masonry-cell fill.

B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:

1. Cast-stone trim in unit masonry.
2. Steel lintels in unit masonry.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for efflorescence removal within one-year period after substantial completion.
2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural steel frame.
3. Section 071919 "Silicone Water and Graffiti-Resistant Treatments" for water and graffiti-resistant treatments applied to unit masonry assemblies.
4. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for rigid insulation in masonry assemblies.
5. Section 072119 "Foamed-In-Place Insulation" for spray applied insulation in masonry assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Decorative CMUs, in the form of small-scale units.
 - 2. Clay face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks.
 - 3. Colored mortar.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
 - 1. Submittal is for information only. Receipt of list does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
 - B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
 - C. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include data on material properties.
 - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
 - c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
 - 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
 - 3. Mortar admixtures.
 - 4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 6. Reinforcing bars.
 - 7. Joint reinforcement.
 - 8. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
 - D. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91/C 91M for air content.
 - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
 - E. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
-

- F. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated.
- B. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
 - 1. Build sample panels for typical exterior and interior walls in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 36 inches high.
 - 2. Where masonry is to match existing, build panels adjacent and parallel to existing surface.
 - 3. Clean one-half of exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
 - 4. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 5. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.

2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe, and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
 1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314.

2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
 - 1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 - 2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C 90.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2150 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Normal weight unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
- C. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C 90.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2150 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions specified in "CMUs" Paragraph.
 - 4. Pattern and Texture: Standard pattern, split-face finish.
 - 5. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Basis-of-Design Split Face "Charcoal" by Echelon Standard Masonry.

2.5 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS

- A. Concrete Lintels concealed from view. Provide one of the following:
 - 1. ASTM C 1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than that of CMUs.
 - 2. Concrete Lintels: Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," and with reinforcing bars indicated.
 - B. Masonry Lintels exposed to view: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with
-

reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.6 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
 2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
 3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
 4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Application:
1. Basis-of-Design product: Face brick in a field color and a separate four color blend as manufactured by Yankee Hill Brick, 3705 S. Coddington Ave / Lincoln, NE 68522 / Phone: (402) 477-6663.
 - a. Colors and Pattern: As indicated on drawings.
 - 1) Note: Brick 3 color is intended to match red brick color on Owner's existing building located across the street.
 - b. Size (Actual Dimensions): Utility 3-5/8 inches wide by 3-5/8 inches high by 11-5/8 inches long
 2. Manufacturers: Manufacturers offering comparable products, subject to compliance with requirements, that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. The Belden Brick Company.
 - b. The Glen-Gery Brick Company.
 - c. Interstate Brick.
- C. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216.
1. Grade: SW.
 2. Type: FBS.
 3. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of minimum 3,000 psi.
 4. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."

2.7 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - 1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
- C. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979/C 979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- D. Colored Masonry Cement Products: Packaged blend made from portland cement, limestone, aggregates, and iron oxide mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements.
 - 1. Preblended Dry Masonry Cement Mortar Mix
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product for brick locations: Lehigh flamingo-BRIXMENT Colored Masonry Cement by Heidelberg Materials.
 - 1) Color C-57 "Twilight Gray".
 - b. Decorative CMU mortar shall match the cement color used in manufacturing selected CMU matrix color.
- E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
 - 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
 - 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- G. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- H. Water: Potable.

2.8 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.

- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.
1. Interior Walls: Mill or Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch diameter.
 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- D. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
- E. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Multiwythe Masonry:
1. Ladder type with one side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches wide, plus one side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches wide or less.
 2. Adjustable (two-piece) type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with separate adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum horizontal play of 1/16 inch and maximum vertical adjustment of 1-1/4 inches. Size ties to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous horizontal wire in the facing wythe.

2.9 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with any of the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304.
 3. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
 4. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
 5. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
 6. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 7. Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches wide.
1. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units.
 2. Where wythes do not align, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized or steel stainless-steel wire.
- D. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.

1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel or stainless-steel wire.
2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel or stainless-steel wire.

E. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors Used in Conjunction With Masonry-Joint Reinforcement:

1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch.
2. Fabricate wire ties from 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire unless otherwise indicated.
3. Fabricate wire connector sections from 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel wire.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; 170-2X Truss Eye-Wire adjustable reinforcement with 2X-Hook.

2.10 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.016 inch thick.
2. Copper: ASTM B 370, Temper H00, cold-rolled copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight or 0.0216 inch thick or ASTM B 370, Temper H01, high-yield copper sheet, 12-oz./sq. ft. weight or 0.0162 inch thick.
3. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
4. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel or copper, with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
5. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
6. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees.
7. Fabricate metal drip edges for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least 3 inches into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam sheds water.
8. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from stainless steel or copper to shapes indicated.

B. Flexible Flashing: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Copper-Fabric Flashing: 7 oz./sq. ft. (2 kg/sq. m) copper sheet bonded between two layers of glass-fiber cloth.

C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:

1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
 3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge or flexible flashing with a metal drip edge.
 4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use metal flashing or flexible flashing.
- D. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from UV-resistant, high-density polyethylene. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts designed to be built into mortar bed joints and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.
- E. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
 2. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50 with maximum lead content of 0.2 percent.
 3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing urethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and remain watertight.
- F. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
- G. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: Stainless-steel sheet 0.019 inch by 1-1/2 inches with a 3/8 inch sealant flange at top.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Cavity Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) less than depth of outer wythe; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [CavClear/Archovations, Inc.](#)

- b. [Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.](#)
- c. [Keene Building Products.](#)
- d. [Mortar Net Solutions.](#)

- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
- 1. Configuration: Provide one of the following:
 - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches high or 16 inches high, with dovetail-shaped notches or dimpled surface that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
 - b. Sheets or strips, full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
 - c. Sheets or strips not less than 3/4 inch thick and installed to full height of cavity, with additional strips 4 inches high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.

2.12 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

2.13 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
- 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime, masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
- 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
 - 3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
 - 4. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.

1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
 3. Mix to match Architect's sample.
 4. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
 - a. Decorative CMU.
 - b. Face brick.
 - c. Cast stone trim units.
 5. Provide individual colors for each type of masonry listed above.
 6. Provide individual colors for each color of masonry items if requested by Architect.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp,

unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

- 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

- 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

- 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
- 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
- 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
- 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry, Lay exposed CMU and Brick masonry in running bond. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
 - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
 - 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping."

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow brick and CMUs as follows:
 - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.

4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
 2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
 3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
 4. Rake out mortar joints for pointing with sealant.
- D. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 COMPOSITE MASONRY

- A. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using one of the following methods as follows:
1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 4.5 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 36 inches o.c. horizontally and 16 inches o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
 - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties.
 2. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
 - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes or tab-type reinforcement.
 - b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
- B. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using bonding system indicated on Drawings.
- C. Collar Joints: Solidly fill collar joints by parging face of first wythe that is laid and shoving units of other wythe into place.
- D. Collar Joints in Clay Tile Masonry: After each course is laid, fill the vertical, longitudinal joint between wythes solidly with mortar at interior walls and partitions.
- E. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide continuity with masonry-joint reinforcement at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units as well as masonry bonding.
- F. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
1. Provide individual metal ties not more than 8 inches o.c.
 2. Provide continuity with masonry-joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
 3. Provide rigid metal anchors not more than 24 inches o.c. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.

3.7 CAVITY WALLS

- A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:
1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 4.5 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 36 inches o.c. horizontally and 16 inches o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
 - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties.
 - b. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
 2. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
 - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes or tab-type reinforcement.
 - b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
 - c. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
 3. Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
- B. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using bonding system indicated on Drawings.
- C. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.

3.8 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.

2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.

- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.9 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:
 1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

3.10 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout, and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar, or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:
 1. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 1/2 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.11 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.

- B. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.12 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4 inches, and through inner wythe to within 1/2 inch of the interior face of wall in exposed masonry. Where interior face of wall is to receive furring or framing, carry flashing completely through inner wythe and turn flashing up approximately 2 inches on interior face.
 - 3. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4 inches, and 1-1/2 inches into the inner wythe.
 - 4. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches; with upper edge tucked under air barrier, lapping at least 4 inches. Fasten upper edge of flexible flashing to sheathing through termination bar.
 - 5. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
 - 6. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
 - 7. Install metal drip edges with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
 - 8. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
 - 9. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
 - 10. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall.

Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.

- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
- E. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
 - 1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
 - 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Place cavity drainage material in cavities and airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

3.13 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to the Kentucky Building Code and Authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.

- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 67 for compressive strength.
- F. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
- G. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780.
- H. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- I. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.
- J. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, according to ASTM C 1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.

3.15 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
 - 6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
 - 7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 8. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.

3.16 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
 - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042000

SECTION 047200 - CAST STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cast-stone trim including the following:
 - a. Window sills.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installing cast-stone units in unit masonry.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. For cast-stone units, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast-stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.

- 1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.

C. Samples for Verification:

- 1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 6 inches square in size.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

- 1. Include copies of material test reports for completed projects, indicating compliance of cast stone with ASTM C 1364.

B. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C 1364, including test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

- 1. Provide test reports based on testing within previous two years.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast-stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Cast Stone Institute.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work and to minimize the need for on-site storage.
- B. Pack, handle, and ship cast-stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
 - 1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast-stone units if required, using dollies with wood supports.
 - 2. Store cast-stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but no fewer than seven days after completing cleaning.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast-stone units from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 CAST-STONE MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type III, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce cast-stone color indicated.

- C. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C 33/C 33M; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast-stone textures and colors.
- D. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33/C 33M, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast-stone textures and colors.
- E. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979/C 979M, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
- F. Admixtures: Use only admixtures specified or approved in writing by Architect.
 - 1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
 - 3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M. Add to mixes for units exposed to the exterior at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in an air content of 4 to 6 percent, except do not add to zero-slump concrete mixes.
 - 4. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 5. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 6. Water-Reducing, Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
- G. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast-stone material.
 - 1. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A 775/A 775M.
- H. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

2.3 CAST-STONE UNITS

- A. Cast-Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C 1364.
 - 1. Units shall be manufactured using the vibrant dry tamp or wet-cast method.
 - 2. Units shall be resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666/C 666M, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364.
- B. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
 - 3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances:
 - 1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
 - 2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.

4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.

D. Cure Units as Follows:

1. Cure units in enclosed, moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F for 12 hours or 70 deg F for 16 hours.
2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
 - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
 - b. No fewer than six days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F or above.
 - c. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.
 - d. No fewer than eight days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F or above.

E. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

F. Colors and Textures:

1. Fine-grained texture as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Provide mortar materials that comply with Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

B. Water: Potable.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666.

1. Basis-of-Design Split-Bend Stone Anchor: #145, 1/8" thick by Heckmann Building Products, 1501 N. 31st Avenue, Melrose Park, Illinois 60160-2911 / Phone: (800) 621-4140.
2. Basis-of-Design U-Type Stone Anchor: #141, 1/8" thick by Heckmann Building Products, 1501 N. 31st Avenue, Melrose Park, Illinois 60160-2911 / Phone: (800) 621-4140.
3. Fasteners: As recommended by manufacturer.

B. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cast-stone manufacturer and expressly approved by cleaner manufacturer for use on cast stone and adjacent masonry materials.

2.6 MORTAR MIXES

A. Comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample and test cast-stone units according to ASTM C 1364.

1. Include one test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Install cast-stone units to comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- B. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
 2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.
- C. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.
- D. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Set units with joints 1/4 to 3/8 inch wide unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
 3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
 4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
 5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
 6. Keep head joints in copings and between other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
 7. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.
- E. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint thickness.
- F. Provide sealant joints at head joints of copings and other horizontal surfaces; at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints; and at locations indicated.
 1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
 3. Rake out joints for pointing with sealant to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked were indicated.
 4. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
 5. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
 - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
 - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
 - 3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean cast stone with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 047200

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Structural steel.
- 2. Grout.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 053100 "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear connectors through deck.
- 2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels not attached to structural-steel frame miscellaneous steel fabrications and other steel items not defined as structural steel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. **Structural Steel:** Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- B. **Seismic-Load-Resisting System:** Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. **Heavy Sections:** Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
 - 1. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
 - 3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.
- D. **Protected Zone:** Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
- E. **Demand Critical Welds:** Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
2. Include embedment Drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
5. Identify members and connections of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System.
6. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
7. Identify demand critical welds.

- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:

1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

- B. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.

- C. Product Test Reports: For the following:

1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
2. Direct-tension indicators.
3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
4. Shear stud connectors.
5. Shop primers.
6. Nonshrink grout.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD OR has a minimum 10 years of experience as a fabricator on commercial projects of similar size and scope.

- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector OR has 15 years of experience as an erector.

- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's or to SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8/D1.8M. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC 303.
 - 2. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
 - 3. AISC 360.
 - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
 - 2. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.
- B. Construction: Combined system of braced frame and shear walls.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- B. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
 - 1. Weight Class: Standard.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- C. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating.
 - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating finish.
- D. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, round head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
- E. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- F. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Configuration: Hooked.
 - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Plain.
- G. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.

4. Finish: Plain.

H. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 193/A 193M, Grade B7.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
3. Finish: Plain.

I. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.

J. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.

2.4 PRIMER

A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

2.5 GROUT

A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.

1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.

1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1-3.

- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.7 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 - 5. Galvanized surfaces.
 - 6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
 - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
 - 4. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
 - 5. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
 - 6. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 7. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
 - 8. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
 - 9. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness

of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

- D. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.

1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test shop-bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

- C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Perform the following inspection procedures if after visual inspection by the project structural engineer and/or testing agency additional testing is warranted:

1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:

1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 - 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
 - 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
 - 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
 - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - 2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 052100 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. K-series steel joists.
 - a. Some locations require special joists, rolled to provide a curved roof profile.
 - 2. Joist accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SJI's "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."
- B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support nonuniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
 - 2. Include joining and anchorage details; bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
 - 3. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications."
 - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify field-welding procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."

- B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

1.7 SEQUENCING

- A. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into cast-in-place concrete and masonry construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
 - 1. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.

2.2 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specification for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
 - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists.
- B. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.
- C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- D. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
- E. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
- F. Do not camber joists.
- G. Camber joists according to SJI's "Specifications."
- H. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

2.3 PRIMERS

2.4 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Fabricate steel bearing plates from ASTM A 36/A 36M steel with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint.

- C. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications."
- D. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- F. Furnish miscellaneous accessories including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist assembly.

2.5 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
- B. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- C. Apply one coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
 - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
 - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
 - 4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads are applied.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. In addition to visual inspection, test field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165/E 165M.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709.
 - c. Ultrasonic Testing: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Testing: ASTM E 94.
- C. Visually inspect bolted connections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 3.
 - 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as primer used on adjacent surfaces.

END OF SECTION 052100

SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof deck.
- 2. Acoustical roof deck.
- 3. Composite floor deck.
- 4. Noncomposite form deck.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight and lightweight structural concrete fill over steel deck.
- 2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
- 3. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

- C. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:

- 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
- 2. Acoustical roof deck.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

- B. FM Global Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Global and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Deck Profile: As indicated.
 - 3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
 - 5. Span Condition: As indicated with triple span or more at all possible locations.
 - 6. Side Laps: Interlocking seam.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL ROOF DECK

- A. Acoustical Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with SDI RD and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized- and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Deck Profile: As indicated.

3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
5. Span Condition: As indicated with triple span or more.
6. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam as coordinated with structural engineer.
7. Acoustical Perforations: Deck units with manufacturer's standard perforated vertical webs.
8. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard premolded roll or strip of glass or mineral fiber.
 - a. Installation of sound-absorbing insulation is specified in Section 075323 "Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing."
9. Acoustical Performance: NRC 0.90, tested in accordance with ASTM C423.

2.4 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

- A. Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with SDI C, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 1. Galvanized- and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating; with unpainted top surface and cleaned and pretreated bottom surface primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
 4. Span Condition: As indicated.

2.5 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

- A. Noncomposite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite deck panels used as a form to comply with SDI NC, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 1. Galvanized- and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
 4. Span Condition: As indicated Triple span or more.
 5. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam as coordinated with structural engineer.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.

- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI standards for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch minimum diameter.
- I. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- J. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.
 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches apart in the field of roof and 6 inches apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.
 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or 18 inches, and as follows:
 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch-long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 12 inches apart with at least one weld at each corner.
 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR DECK

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:

1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.
 2. Weld Spacing:
 - a. Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 16 inches apart, but not more than 18 inches apart unless otherwise indicated on structural drawings.
 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch-long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
1. End Joints: Lapped 2" minimum except butted where headed studs are to be applied.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure in accordance with SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, in accordance with SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.
- 3.5 REPAIR
- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting:
1. Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
 2. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
- 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck in accordance with quality-assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.
 - a. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

2. Steel decking will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 053100

SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shelf angles and connections.
 - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
 - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - 1. Grade: ST33H.
 - 2. Coating: G60, typical. G90 or equivalent at brick veneer locations.
- B. Steel Sheet for Drift Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
 - 1. Grade: 33.
 - 2. Coating: G60.

2.2 NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As noted on the drawings and minimum 0.0428 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: As noted on the drawings and minimum of 1-5/8 inches.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Base-Metal Thickness: Match steel studs and minimum of 0.0428 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: Manufacturer's standard width.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated but not less than 0.0428 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
 - 3. Section Properties: As indicated.
- D. Steel Single- or Double-L Headers: Manufacturer's standard L-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated but not less than 0.0428 inch.
 - 2. Top Flange Width: Minimum 1-1/2 inches.
- E. Drift Clips for non-load-bearing partitions: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

2.3 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:

1. Supplementary framing.
2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
3. Web stiffeners.
4. Anchor clips.
5. End clips.
6. Foundation clips.
7. Stud kickers and knee braces.

2.4 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.

- D. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
 - 1. Anchor Spacing: As indicated on the drawings, or to match stud spacing.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks, with gap not exceeding 1/8 inch between the end of wall-framing member and the web of track.
 - 1. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks.
 - 2. Space studs as follows:
 - a. Stud Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs according to AISI S200, Section C1. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
 - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
 - 2. Install tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
 - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced vertically as indicated on Drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of two screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches deep.
 - 2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges, and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges; terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
 - K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- 3.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION
- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
 - B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated or if not indicated 16 inches.
 - C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
 - D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing or infill studs and anchor to building structure.
 4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
 - E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 18 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
 - a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
 2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 4. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.7 REPAIR

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Cold-formed steel framing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
- 2. Elevator hoist beams.
- 3. Metal ladders.
- 4. Metal bollards and bollard covers.
- 5. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

- 1. Loose steel lintels.
- 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- 3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

- C. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
- 2. Section 042613 "Masonry Veneer" for installing loose lintels at masonry veneer.
- 3. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing."
- 4. Section 057300 "Decorative Metal Railing" for decorative metal railings and guards.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:

1. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
2. Elevator hoist beams.
3. Metal ladders.
4. Metal bollards.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- D. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.

- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- D. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- F. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- E. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
- F. ¼" Plastic Bollard Covers: Polyethylene Thermoplastic (HDPE) tubes having ultra-violet resistance and anti-static properties, nominal 0.250 inches. Color shall be OSHA yellow unless otherwise noted. Coordinate covers with pipe diameters.
 - 1. Top: Dome top.
 - 2. Sleeve height: See drawings.
 - 3. Surface of sleeve to be smooth with round top, no ribbed or two-piece systems accepted.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
 - 1. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.

- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- E. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

2.7 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3, except for elevator pit ladders.
 - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Steel Ladders:
 - 1. Space siderails 18 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
 - 3. Rungs: 3/4-inch-diameter, steel bars.
 - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
 - 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
 - 6. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 3/4 inch in least dimension.
 - 7. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
 - 8. Galvanize exterior ladders, including brackets.

2.8 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
 - 1. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
 - 2. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
- B. Galvanize exterior bollards.

2.9 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize exterior plates.
- C. Prime interior plates with zinc-rich primer.

2.10 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize and prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.11 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.12 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
 - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning or " SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
 - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 3. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 4. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.
- C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
 1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.

3.3 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Provide minimum 35 inch deep embedment. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.

- B. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
- C. Install bollard post sleeve with manufacturer's neoprene adhesive tape per manufacturer's installation guidelines.

3.4 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 055113 - STEEL PAN STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill for treads.
- 2. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for standard guard and railings.
- 3. Section 057300 "Decorative Metal Railings" for decorative guard and railings.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

- 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design metal stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

- B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft..
 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in..
 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
 5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to $L/240$ or $1/4$ inch, whichever is less.

2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed).
- D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, structural steel, Grade 25, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
- E. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, structural steel, Grade 30, unless another grade is required by design loads.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

2.5 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," Commercial Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Stair Framing:
 - 1. Fabricate stringers of steel tubes.
 - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of tube stringers.
 - 2. Construct platforms of steel tube headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements indicated.
 - 3. Weld stringers to headers; weld framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.
 - 4. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below. Locate hanger rods and struts where they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
 - 5. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
- C. Metal-Pan Stairs: Form risers, treads, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than 1/8 inch.
 - 1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated cold or hot-rolled steel sheet.
 - 2. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of treads where they will be concealed. Do not weld risers to stringers.
 - 3. Attach risers and treads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
 - 4. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
 - 5. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as treads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.
- D. Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of floors, bearing surfaces and locations of bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLING METAL PAN STAIRS

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- F. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
- G. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

END OF SECTION 055113

SECTION 055213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 2. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2.3 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

2.4 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
- B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
 - 1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
- C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
 - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.

2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
 3. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
 2. Provide square or hex socket flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Handrail Brackets: Fabricator's standard for painted steel railings, center of handrail 2-1/2 inches from face of railing or wall.
- B. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- C. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- E. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- G. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.

- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
 - 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- J. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:
 - 1. As detailed.
 - 2. By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
 - 3. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.
- K. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- L. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- M. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- N. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.

1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- O. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

2.8 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanized Railings:

1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
2. Comply with ASTM A123/A123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
3. Comply with ASTM A153/A153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
4. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
5. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

B. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.

C. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves; however, hot-dip galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3.

E. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1 for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

1. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer unless indicated.
2. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.

1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.

4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
 6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- B. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Anchor posts to metal surfaces (or where drawings indicate face mounting to concrete) with flanges, angle type, or floor type, as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
1. For steel railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends to concrete and masonry with flanges connected to railing ends or brackets on underside of rails connected to railing ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends, using nonwelded connections.
- C. Attach handrails to walls with wall brackets. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch Insert dimension clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface.
1. Use type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
 2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.

3. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
4. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members or use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

3.6 REPAIR

A. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

END OF SECTION 055213

SECTION 057300 - DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- 1. Illuminated steel decorative guard rails with perforated panel infill.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 055113 "Steel Pan Stairs" for steel stringer to anchor railings.
- 2. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for nonornamental railings fabricated from pipes and tubes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Railings: Guards, handrails, and similar devices used for protection of occupants at open-sided floor areas, pedestrian guidance and support, visual separation, or wall protection.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:

- 1. Illuminated rails.
- 2. Perforated metal infill panels.
- 3. Metal finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative metal.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
- 3. For illuminated railings, include wiring diagrams and roughing-in details.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.

- 1. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, illuminated handrail, and guard infill. Sample need not be full height.
 - a. Show method of connecting and finishing members at intersections.

- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including structural analysis, preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
 - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not suit structural performance requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 2. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 STEEL AND IRON DECORATIVE RAILINGS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain steel decorative railing components from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed) or ASTM A513/A513M, Type 5.
- C. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A29/A29M, Grade 1010.
- D. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- E. Illuminated Top Rails: Provide internal illumination using concealed, internally wired, integrated LED dimmable lamps to illuminate walking surfaces adjacent to railings without light leaks. Make provisions for servicing and for concealed connection to electric service.

- 1. LED Luminaires: Comply with Section 265119 "LED Interior Lighting" and as follows:

- a. Lamp Type: Linear.
- b. Light Illumination: White, standard output; 80 lumens/300 mm.
- c. Efficacy: Minimum 80 lm/W.
- d. Color Rendering Index: Minimum 80 (minimum).
- e. Correlated Color Temperature: 3500 K.
- f. Rated Lamp Life: 50,000 hours at 70 percent lamp illumination output.
- g. Beam Distribution: Symmetric.
- h. LED Diffuser: UV-stabilized acrylic, translucent, matching rail profile.
- i. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac or 277 V ac input; 12 V dc or 24 V dc output. Coordinate with building electrical system.
- j. Internal Driver: 120 W.
- k. UL Listing: Dry.
- l. IP Rating: IP67.
- m. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- F. Perforated Metal Infill Panels:

- 1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.1196 inch thick (11 gauge), with 1/4-inch holes 3/8 inch o.c. in staggered rows. 40% open area with solid boarder (1/2 inch margin) on individual panel sections.
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Provide product with perforations matching McNichols Perforated Metal, Item 16143811.

2.4 FABRICATED COMPONENTS

- A. Perforated Metal Panel Clips: 1-3/32 inch wide X 1-9/16 inch high or angles as indicated.
- B. Post Mounted Handrail Brackets: 1-1/4 inch diameter radius collar to pipe support . Provide 2-21/32 inch length at side handrails.
- C. Wall Mounted Handrail Brackets: 2-3/4 inch diameter flange X 2-21/32 inch length.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
 - 1. Uncoated-Steel Items: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating where concealed, Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners where exposed.
 - 2. Dissimilar Metals: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 3. Finish exposed fasteners to match appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching railings to other work unless otherwise indicated or exposed fasteners are unavoidable.
- D. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- C. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- D. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.

- B. Form decorative metal to required shapes and sizes, true to line and level with true curves and accurate angles and surfaces. Finish exposed surfaces to smooth, sharp, well-defined lines and arris.
- C. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- D. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- E. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Cope or miter corner joints. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
- F. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- G. Provide necessary rebates, lugs, and brackets to assemble units and to attach to other work. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in shop welding and brazing. Weld behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded joints of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
 - 1. Where welding cannot be concealed behind finished surfaces, finish joints to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 2 Welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay.
- I. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- J. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- K. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint.
- M. Mechanical Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
- N. Form changes in direction as follows:
 - 1. As detailed.
 - 2. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.

- O. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- P. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- Q. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns, unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- R. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- S. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- T. Perforated-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from perforated metal made from steel.
 - 1. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than 0.043 inch thick.
 - 2. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

2.9 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves; however, hot-dip galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.

- C. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1 for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
 - 1. Shop prime uncoated railings with primers specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" unless indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.
- B. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative metal.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
 - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
 - 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING AND GUARD RAILING PIPE CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

3.4 INSTALLING GRILLES

- A. Mount grilles at heights and in positions indicated, adjusting grilles to be centered on frames.
 - 1. Secure to framing with mechanical fasteners. Welding of prefabricated items to frames shall not be permitted.

3.5 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Weld anchor posts to metal surfaces and grind smooth.

3.6 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Attach handrails to walls and anchoring posts with wall brackets. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.

1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.

- B. Secure wall brackets to building construction as follows:

1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
3. For gypsum board assemblies set into wood backing or concrete construction using spacers to not crush intervening materials.

3.7 CLEANING

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 057300

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
 - 2. Plywood backing panels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
 - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
 - 3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
 - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
 - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat all interior rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Cants.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species.

- C. Concealed Boards: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species 15 percent maximum moisture content.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as appropriate for the substrate.
 - 1. Material used on the interior: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
 - 2. Material exposed to the exterior: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
- B. Adhesives for Gluing to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- C. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- D. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
 - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
 - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
 - 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.
- E. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- F. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- G. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- H. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

- I. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wall sheathing.
 - 2. Roof sheathing.
 - 3. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested according to ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat plywood indicated on the Drawings.

2.4 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.
 - 1. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1 sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- C. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C1002.
- D. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- E. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
 - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
 - 2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

2.7 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
 - 1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.

- E. Coordinate wall and parapet sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - 1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
 - a. Nail to wood framing.
 - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

3.3 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to wood framing with screws.
 - 2. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
 - 3. Install panels with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
 - 4. Install panels with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Horizontal Installation: Abut ends over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent panels not less than one stud spacing. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
 - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.
 - 2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, panels may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
- D. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
 - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.
 - 2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, panels may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.

- E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 064116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets.
- 2. Plastic-laminate-clad countertops.
- 3. Cabinet hardware and accessories.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection:

- 1. Plastic laminates.
- 2. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.
- 3. Accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If cabinets must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.
- B. Deliver countertops only after casework and supports on which they will be installed have been completed in installation areas.
- C. Store countertops in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

- D. Keep surfaces of countertops covered with protective covering during handling and installation.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets or tops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets or tops by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets or tops are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that cabinets can be supported and installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Type of Construction: Face frame.
- C. Cabinet, Door, and Drawer Front Interface Style: Reveal overlay.
- D. Reveal Dimension: 1/2 inch.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
- F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
 - 2. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
 - 3. Edges: PVC edge tape, 0.18 inch thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish, except for counter tops which shall be Grade HGS.
- G. Materials for Semi-exposed Surfaces:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
 - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC edge tape, 0.18 inch thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
 - b. For semi-exposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- H. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.
- I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL.
- J. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
- K. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
1. As indicated by laminate manufacturer's designations.
 2. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
 - a. Solid colors, matte finish.
 - b. Patterns, matte finish.

2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: ISO 4586-3, Grade HGS.
- C. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 1. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
 - a. Solid colors, matte finish.
 - b. Patterns, matte finish.
- D. Edge Treatment: 2.0-mm PVC edging.
- E. Core Material: Particleboard or MDF.
- F. Core Material at Sinks: Particleboard made with exterior glue, MDF made with exterior glue or veneer-core plywood made with Type II adhesive.

- G. Core Thickness: 3/4 inch.
 - 1. Build up countertop thickness to 1-1/2 inches at front, back, and ends with additional layers of core material laminated to top.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Grommets:
 - 1. Wire-Management Grommets: Circular, grommets and matching caps with slot for wire passage.
 - a. Finish: Molded plastic.
 - b. Outside Diameter: 1-1/4 inches.
 - c. Color: Black.

2.4 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 - 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 - 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.
 - 4. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.

2.5 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 087111 "Door Hardware (Descriptive Specification)."
- B. Butt Hinges: 2-3/4-inch, five-knuckle steel hinges made from 0.095-inch-thick metal, and as follows:
 - 1. Semi-concealed Hinges for Overlay Doors: BHMA A156.9, B01521.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- D. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 5 inches long, 2-1/2 inches deep, and 5/16 inch in diameter.
- E. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- F. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with metal shelf rests.
- G. Shelf Rests: metal.

- H. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
 - 1. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
- I. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- J. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- K. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- L. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
 - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- M. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- A. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Type I, waterproof type as selected by fabricator to comply with requirements.
 - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Fabricate countertops to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch over base cabinets. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - 1. Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
 - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.

- D. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing cabinets, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required.
- C. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- D. Examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing.

3.3 INSTALLATION - CASEWORK

- A. Grade: Install cabinets to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install cabinets level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
 - 1. Use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- F. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.

1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips or No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish, or toggle bolts through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

3.4 INSTALLATION - COUNTERTOPS

- A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
 1. Provide cutouts for appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately, and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
- C. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in the same manner as shop jointing, using dowels, splines, adhesives, and fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Prepare edges to be joined in shop so Project-site processing of top and edge surfaces is not required. Locate field joints where indicated on Shop Drawings.
 1. Secure field joints in countertops with concealed clamping devices located within 6 inches of front and back edges and at intervals not exceeding 24 inches. Tighten in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to exert a constant, heavy-clamping pressure at joints.
- D. Countertop Installation:
 1. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 2. Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
 3. Anchor wall cleating necessary for proper setting for countertops not supported by casework.
 4. Install countertops level and true in line. Use concealed shims as required to maintain not more than 1/8-inch-in-96-inch variation from a straight, level plane.
 5. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
 6. Seal joints between countertop and backsplash, if any, and joints where countertop and backsplash abut walls with mildew-resistant silicone sealant or another permanently elastic sealing compound recommended by countertop material manufacturer.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets and countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.

- C. Clean cabinets and countertops on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces.
- D. Protection: Provide kraft paper or other suitable covering over countertop surfaces, taped to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 064116

SECTION 066400 - PLASTIC PANELING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Plastic sheet paneling.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selections:
 - 1. Plastic paneling and trim accessories
 - a. For plastic paneling and trim accessories, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install plastic paneling until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plastic paneling and trim accessories from single manufacturer.

2.2 PLASTIC SHEET PANELING

- A. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Paneling: Gelcoat-finished, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic panels complying with ASTM D5319.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Crane Composites, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Glasteel.](#)
 - c. [Marlite.](#)
 - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows when tested by a qualified testing agency according to ASTM E84. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
3. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.09 inch.
 4. Surface Finish: Molded pebble texture.
 5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trim Accessories: Manufacturer's standard one-piece vinyl extrusions designed to retain and cover edges of panels. Provide division bars, inside corners, outside corners, and caps as needed to conceal edges.
 1. Color: Match panels.
- B. Exposed Fasteners: Nylon drive rivets recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Adhesive: As recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer.
- D. Sealant: Mildew-resistant, single-component, neutral-curing or acid-curing silicone sealant recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer and complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that could impair adhesive bond, including oil, grease, dirt, and dust.
- B. Condition panels by unpacking and placing in installation space before installation according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Lay out paneling before installing. Locate panel joints to provide equal panels at ends of walls not less than half the width of full panels.
 1. Mark plumb lines on substrate at panel joint locations for accurate installation.
 2. Locate panel joints to allow clearance at panel edges according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic paneling according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install panels in a full spread of adhesive.
- C. Install trim accessories with adhesive.

- D. Fill grooves in trim accessories with sealant before installing panels, and bed inside corner trim in a bead of sealant.
- E. Maintain uniform space between panels and wall fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
- F. Maintain uniform space between adjacent panels and between panels and floors, ceilings, and fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
- G. Remove excess sealant and smears as paneling is installed. Clean with solvent recommended by sealant manufacturer and then wipe with clean dry cloths until no residue remains.

END OF SECTION 066400

SECTION 071326 - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.
 - 1. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
- B. Maintain adequate ventilation during preparation and application of waterproofing materials.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard materials-only warranty in which manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement waterproofing material for waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- A. Installer's Special Warranty: By Installer, covering Work of this Section.
 - 1. Warranty includes removing and reinstalling protection board, drainage panels, insulation, pedestals, and pavers on plaza decks.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Modified Bituminous Sheet: Minimum 60-mil nominal thickness, self-adhering sheet consisting of 56 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated on one side to a 4-mil-thick, polyethylene-film reinforcement, and with release liner on adhesive side; formulated for application with primer or surface conditioner that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Physical Properties:
 - a. Tensile Strength, Membrane: 250 psi minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
 - b. Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
 - c. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
 - d. Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of 1/8-inch movement; ASTM C 836.
 - e. Puncture Resistance: 40 lbf minimum; ASTM E 154.
 - f. Water Absorption: 0.2 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F; ASTM D 570.
 - g. Water Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms maximum; ASTM E 96/E 96M, Water Method.
 - h. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 200 feet minimum; ASTM D 5385.
 - 2. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.

2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
 - 1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.
- C. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.

- D. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, of trowel grade or low viscosity.
- E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, modified asphalt coating.

2.3 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 sieve laminated to one side of the core and a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft..

2.4 INSULATION

- A. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
 - 1. Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the waterproofing.
 - 1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits recommended in writing by manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 3. Verify that compacted subgrade is dry, smooth, sound, and ready to receive waterproofing sheet.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.

- E. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
 - 1. Install sheet strips of width according to manufacturer's written instructions and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of 1/16 inch.
- F. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners according to ASTM D 6135.
 - 1. Install membrane strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install 3/4-inch fillets of liquid membrane on horizontal inside corners and as follows:
 - a. At footing-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane in each direction from corner or install membrane strip centered over corner.
 - b. At plaza-deck-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane or sheet strips onto deck waterproofing and to finished height of sheet flashing.
- G. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions according to ASTM D 6135.

3.3 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET-WATERPROOFING APPLICATION

- A. Install modified bituminous sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- C. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch-minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams, and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F, install self-adhering, modified bituminous sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F.
- D. Two-Ply Application: Install sheets to form a membrane with lap widths not less than 50 percent of sheet widths, to provide a minimum of two thicknesses of sheet membrane over areas to receive waterproofing.
- E. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets from low to high points of decks to ensure that laps shed water.
- F. Apply continuous sheets over already-installed sheet strips, bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
- G. Seal edges of sheet-waterproofing terminations with mastic.
- H. Install sheet-waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
- I. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in all directions.

- J. Immediately install board insulation at exterior walls and molded sheet drainage panels with butted joints over waterproofing membrane or board insulation.

3.4 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE-PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or other methods that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
 - 1. For vertical applications, install board insulation before installing drainage panels.

3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch of projections and penetrations.
- B. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a site representative qualified by waterproofing membrane manufacturer to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish daily reports to Architect.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 PROTECTION, REPAIR, AND CLEANING

- A. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
- B. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- C. Protect installed board insulation from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- E. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071326

SECTION 071919 - SILICONE WATER AND GRAFFITI-RESISTANT TREATMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes water and graffiti resistant treatment applied to exterior exposed masonry walls.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Submit manufacturer's instructions for methods and application procedures.
 - 3. Submit manufacturer's instructions for methods and application procedures.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide two gallons of manufacturer's graffiti remover.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The Contractors involved with work covered by this Section shall have had a minimum of five (5) years experience using specified techniques for water and graffiti-resistant treatment application.
- B. Tradesman must be competent and experienced and shall demonstrate reasonable care during performance of operations described in this Section.
- C. Tests and Approvals:
 - 1. Sample Area:
 - a. Contractor shall apply a test area of wall surface from four square feet in size for inspection and approval by the Owner's Representative after treatment has cured. Test area shall be available for comparison during the specified scope of work.
 - b. Samples of adjacent materials shall be tested for possible reaction with the water and graffiti-resistant treatment. Such samples shall be available for inspection by the Owner's Representative.
 - 2. If any part of this work shall be found defective (because of improper preparation of surfaces or application of treatment) at any time before the final acceptance of the item, the Contractor shall, at his own expense, make good such defect to the satisfaction of the A/E.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection

1. Contractor shall provide, at all times, covered access to premises and necessary utilities, space for storage of material and equipment, etc.
2. All activities shall be in compliance with local and governmental regulations and codes.
3. The surface and atmospheric temperature should be at least 40 degrees Fahrenheit. and rising during application and for eight hours following. Surface and air temperatures should not exceed 90 degrees Fahrenheit.
4. Surfaces should be dry.
5. Apply only in well-ventilated areas.
6. All caulking (sealants) should be applied a minimum of 24 hours prior to application, or as required by sealant manufacturer, whichever is greater, before application of water and graffiti-resistant treatment.
7. The Contractor shall require applicators to observe safety precautions as outlined on containers and labels. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide well-ventilated areas for all workmen as well as to observe safety precautions as stipulated on labels and instructions of all materials used, and as required by governing authorities during application and drying.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer's warranty that water repellant will repel water and will allow water vapor out of substrate for not less than ten (10) years commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER AND GRAFFITI-RESISTANT TREATMENTS

A. Water and Graffiti-Resistant Treatment:

1. Use clear-drying, penetrating, solvent-based silicone for weatherproofing masonry materials and protecting them from graffiti attacks.
2. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Total Solids per ASTM D 2369: Fifteen (15) percent.
 - b. Comply with national, state, and district AIM VOC regulations.
 - c. Water Absorption Reduction (Brick) per ASTM C 67: Greater than 99 percent.
 - d. Water Absorption Reduction (CMU) per ASTM C 140: Greater than 92 percent.
 - e. Water Vapor Transmission WVT per ASTM D6490: Minimum 97 percent retention:
 - f. Cleanability Level 2 per ASTM D7089.
3. Basis-of-Design Product:
 - a. "Sure Klean Weather Seal Blok-Guard & Graffiti Control WB15" by PROSOC, Inc. (800) 255-4255.

B. Graffiti Remover:

1. Product shall be manufactured and approved for use by the water and graffiti-resistant treatment manufacturer:
2. Basis-of-Design Product:

- a. "Sure Klean Graffiti Remover" by PROSOCO, Inc. (800) 255-4255.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water and graffiti-resistant treatment.
 3. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying product.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Verify surfaces to receive water and graffiti-resistant treatments are clean, free of efflorescence, oil, grease, or other foreign matter detrimental to application.
- B. Remove loose particles and foreign matter. Remove grease or oil with a solvent, effective alkaline cleaner, or detergent as recommended by water and graffiti-resistant treatment manufacturer.
- C. Allow surfaces to dry prior to application.
- D. Protect all surrounding areas as recommended by the manufacturer or as directed by the Architect.
 1. Windows: Windows shall be protected from contact with materials by masking with polyethylene or other approved techniques.
 2. All polished stone, metal, or non-masonry surfaces shall be protected from contact with the material by masking with polyethylene.
 3. Masonry surfaces must be in good repair. All new masonry construction surfaces must be allowed to cure for a minimum of 28 days prior to application. Surfaces must be completely dry.
- E. Verify all windows, exterior intakes and air conditioning vents are covered and air handling equipment is shut down during application and until vapors have dissipated.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Test each surface and/or material to be treated to ensure compatibility and desired water and graffiti-resistant treatment results. The surface to be treated must be clean and free of all foreign matter and as dry as possible to ensure proper penetration of water and graffiti-resistant treatment.
- B. Do NOT dilute water and graffiti-resistant treatment.
- C. Proceed with application of water and graffiti-resistant treatment in an orderly manner once application rate has been tested; work from bottom to top of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other.

- D. Apply water and graffiti-resistant treatment to dry surfaces that comply with manufacturer's written instructions; use brush or spray application methods, at Contractor's option.
- E. Preferred method of application is with low pressure, spray equipment. Use roller or brush for small scall applications or when spray applications are not appropriate. Apply in coverage rate as recommended by manufacturer for type of material.
- F. Spray Application:
 - 1. Uniformly saturate water and graffiti-resistant treatment using the "wet-on-wet" application method from bottom up, creating a 6 to 8 inch rundown below the spray contact point. Apply in accordance with manufacturer recommendation.
 - 2. Let the first application penetrate for 2 to 3 minutes. Brush out heavy runs and drips to prevent build up. Do not spray apply at pressures exceeding 50 psi.
 - 3. Reapply a second coat of water and graffiti-resistant treatment for heavily textured and porous surfaces.
 - a. Apply once first coat is dry to touch, or within two hours of first coat. Allowing more than two hours between coats reduces the effectiveness of the second coat.
- G. Roller or Brush Application:
 - 1. Uniformly saturate the surface with water and graffiti-resistant treatment. Avoid excessive overlapping. Brush out heavy runs and drips to prevent build up.
 - 2. Reapply second coat of water and graffiti-resistant treatment for maximum protection.
 - a. Apply once first coat is dry to touch, or within two hours of first coat. Allowing more than two hours between coats reduces the effectiveness of the second coat.
- H. Vertical Wood Application:
 - 1. Uniformly saturate the surface with water and graffiti-resistant treatment to the point of rejection.
 - 2. Let the first application penetrate for 2 to 3 minutes.
 - 3. Reapply a second coat of water and graffiti-resistant treatment. Apply once the first coat is dry to touch, or within two hours of the first coat.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces not scheduled to receive treatment. If applied on unscheduled surfaces, remove immediately, by manufacturer approved method.
- B. Protect treated surfaces from rain for at least 6 hours after application.
- C. Correct damage by cleaning, as approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 071919

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
2. Glass-fiber blanket.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 07 Section "Foamed-in-Place Insulation" for spray-foam applied insulation.
2. Division 07 Section 075323 "Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
3. Section 092900 for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Document the following for Spray Insulation and Air Barrier.

1. Provide evidence from primary materials manufacturer indicating approval of products not manufactured by primary manufacturer.
2. Provide evidence that materials are compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use.
3. Provide evidence indicating that field peel-adhesion test on all materials to which sealants are adhered have been performed and the changes made, if required, to other approved materials, in order to achieve successful adhesion.
4. Provide evidence from manufacturer stating that materials proposed for use are permanently chemically compatible and adhesively compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use. Submit letter from manufacturer stating that cleaning materials used during installation are chemically compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.

- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation
2. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
3. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
4. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. A. Temperature: Install air barrier within range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air barrier manufacturer. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate.
- B. B. Field Conditions: Do not install air barrier in snow, rain, fog, or mist. Do not install air barrier when the temperature of substrate surfaces and surrounding air temperatures are below those recommended by the manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and minimum compressive strength indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Type V, VI, or VII.
 2. Minimum R-10.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

2.3 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. General:
1. Fasteners should be appropriate for the substrate
 2. Use manufacturer's recommended fasteners when using proprietary clips and brackets.
 3. Adhesively attached anchoring systems are not acceptable without Architect approval.
 4. Contractor's Option: Unless otherwise indicated, provide any mechanically attached insulation fastening system specified.

- B. Mechanically Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
 - 1. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - 2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- C. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
- D. Ramset I-F Thermal-Break insulation fasteners.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
 - 1. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.
 - 2. Provide manufacturer's recommended applied thermal barrier for exposed installations.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that substrates are clean, dry, and free of substances that are harmful to insulation.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by insulation manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas to be insulated; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions, and with faces flush.
 - 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
 - 3. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
- B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
 - 1. Coordinate with installation of materials which cover air barrier, to ensure exposure period does not exceed that recommended by the air barrier manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072119 - FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Foamed-in-place masonry wall insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Installer Safety Training: Certification of completion of High Pressure SPF Chemical Health and Safety Training course from the Center for Polyurethane Industry.
- C. Spray Polyurethane Foam Association Certification: Installer shall be a certified SPFA Certified Installer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FOAMED-IN-PLACE MASONRY WALL INSULATION

- A. Foamed-In-Place Masonry Insulation: Two component thermal insulation produced by combining a plastic resin and catalyst foaming agent surfactant which, when properly ratioed and mixed, together with compressed air produce a cold-setting foam insulation in the hollow cores of hollow unit masonry walls.
 - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread, smoke developed and fuel contributed of 0, 5 and 0 respectively.
 - 2. Combustion Characteristics: Must be noncombustible, Class A building material.
 - 3. Thermal Values: "R" Value of 4.91/inch @ 32 degrees F mean; ASTM C-177.
 - 4. Sound Abatement: Minimum Sound Transmission Class ("STC") rating of 53 and a minimum Outdoor Indoor Transmission Class ("OITC") rating of 44 for 8" wall assembly (ASTM E 90-90).

5. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. cfiFOAM, Inc.
 - b. Tailored Chemical Products, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that substrates are clean, dry, and free of substances that are harmful to insulation.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by insulation manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas to be insulated; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION – BLOCK FILL

- A. General: Install foamed-in-place insulation from interior, or as specified, prior to installation of interior finish work and after all masonry and structural concrete work is in place; comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Installation: Fill all open cells and voids in hollow concrete masonry walls where shown on drawings. The foam insulation shall be pressure injected through a series of 5/8" to 7/8" holes drilled into every vertical column of block cells (every 8" on center) beginning at an approximate height of four (4) feet from finished floor level. Repeat this procedure at an approximate height of ten (10) feet above the first horizontal row of holes (or as needed) until the void is completely filled. Patch holes with mortar and score to resemble existing surface.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.

END OF SECTION 072119

SECTION 072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Building wrap.
 - 2. Flexible flashing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Barricade Wrap Plus by Barricade Building Products or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - b. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
 - c. TYPAR.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 10 perms not more than 20 perms, per ASTM E96/E96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
 - 3. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

2.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING

- A. Butyl Rubber Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.020 inch.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer for substrate.

- C. Nails and Staples: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer and complying with ASTM F1667.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover exposed cavity surface of exterior walls with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing or insulation.
- B. Cover cavity surface with water-resistive barrier as follows:
 - 1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
 - 2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cover board sheathing with water-resistive barrier immediately after sheathing is installed
- D. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
 - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
 - 3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
 - 4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
 - 5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.3 REPAIR

- A. Repairs: For minor punctures or tears, less than 3 inches (76 mm), cover and completely seal with seam tape. For larger holes, greater than 3 inches (76 mm), use slit flashing technique.
 - 1. Slit flashing requires making a horizontal slit above the damaged area and placing a cut piece of weather barrier into the slit, covering the damaged area. Tape the perimeter of the patched area.

END OF SECTION 072500

SECTION 072726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barriers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installation of veneer anchors that interface with barrier system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review barrier system requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details, flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build integrated mockups of exterior wall assembly, 150 sq. ft., incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, storefront, door frame and sill, insulation, ties and other penetrations, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, application of air barriers, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier assembly.
 - a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of air barrier before external insulation and cladding are installed.
 - b. Include junction with roofing membrane and foundation wall intersection.
 - c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups and apply air barrier until mockups are approved.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Deliver materials and components in manufacturers' original, unopened and undamaged containers or bundles, fully identified. Avoid damage during unloading, storing and installation.
- C. Store, protect and handle materials and components in accordance with manufacturer recommendations to prevent damage, contamination and deterioration.
- D. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
 - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., when tested according to ASTM E 2357.

2.3 VAPOR PERMEABLE AIR BARRIER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Vapor permeable air barrier system is based on AIR-SHIELD LMP by W.R. Meadows, Inc., PO Box 338, Hampshire, Illinois 60140-0338. Phone: (800) 342-5976. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.

- 1. Liquid Air Barrier System: One component, polymer modified, cold applied liquid vapor permeable air barrier membrane.

- a. Performance Based Specification: Air barrier membrane shall be water-based, that cures to form a tough, seamless, elastomeric membrane having the following characteristics:

- 1) Air Leakage ASTM E2357: < 0.04 cfm / ft.2 @ 75 Pa (1.57 lb./ft.2).
- 2) Air Permeability ASTM E2178: < 0.004 cfm/ft.2 @ 75 Pa (1.57 lb./ft.2).
- 3) Water Vapor Permeance ASTM E96 Method B: > 10 perms.
- 4) Elongation ASTM D412: 400%.
- 5) Flexibility at -20o C ASTM C836 2" mandrel: Pass.
- 6) Flame Spread and Smoke Development, ASTM E84: Class A.Water-Resistive Vapor
- 7) Dry film thickness: 40 mils

- b. Accessories:

- 1) Flashing and Transition Membrane: Self-adhesive polymeric sheet membrane having a thickness of 40 mils (1 mm).
 - a) AIR-SHIELD THRU-WALL FLASHING
- 2) Joint Sealant: Single component, polyurethane joint sealant for exterior sheathing panels.

- a) POURTHANE® NS
 - 3) Liquid Flashing: Fluid applied, single component, flashing membrane for rough openings and detailing.
 - a) AIR-SHIELD LIQUID FLASHING.
 - 4) Joint Tape: Self-adhesive polymeric membrane for joints of plywood and oriented strand board (OSB).
 - a) AIR-SHIELD
 - 5) Membrane Adhesive - Temperatures above 40° F (4° C): Water-Based Adhesive
 - a) MEL-PRIME
 - 6) Membrane Adhesive - Temperatures below 30° F (-1° C): Solvent-Based Primer
 - a) MEL-PRIME VOC Compliant Solvent-Base Adhesive or Standard Solvent-Base Adhesive
 - 7) Pointing Mastic: mastic for sealing penetrations and terminations of membrane.
 - a) POINTING MASTIC
 - 8) Detailing Membrane: non-slump waterproofing material for joint detailing.
 - a) BEM
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 1. Henry Company
 - 2. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing
 - 3. Tremco

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Requirement: Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.0250 inch thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 - 2. Verify that substrates have cured and aged for minimum time recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 3. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture. Test concrete substrates for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching material.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- G. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.
- H. Bridge isolation joints and discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with air-barrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement according to manufacturer's written instructions and details.

3.3 ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessory materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
 - 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 - 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.

3. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 4. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
 - C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
 - D. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
 - E. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
 1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
 2. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Set in full bed of silicone sealant applied to walls, frame, and air-barrier material.
 - F. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
 - G. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
 - H. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch-wide, transition strip.
 - I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
 - J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.
- 3.4 PRIMARY AIR-BARRIER MATERIAL INSTALLATION
- A. Apply air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details. Apply air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
 1. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 3. Where multiple prime coats are needed to achieve required bond, allow adequate drying time between coats.

- B. Apply continuous unbroken air-barrier material to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply an increased thickness of air-barrier material in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
 - 1. Vapor-Permeable, Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to comply with performance requirements, applied in one or more equal coats as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Apply additional material as needed to achieve void- and pinhole-free surface, but do not exceed thickness on which required vapor permeability is based.
- C. Do not cover air barrier until it has been inspected by manufacturer's representative and authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a site representative qualified by vapor permeable air barrier system manufacturer to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, and protection.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 072726

SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes standing-seam metal roof panels.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 077253 "Snow Guards" for prefabricated devices designed to hold snow on the roof surface, allowing it to melt and drain off slowly.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of deck during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.
 - 9. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
 - B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 - C. Field quality-control reports.
 - D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.
 - C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 1. Build mockups for typical roof area only, including accessories.
 - a. Size: Full eave to peak by 6 feet wide section of roofing.
 - b. Each type of exposed seam and seam termination.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures.
 - a. Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward or outward.
 2. Snow Loads: 25 lbf/sq. ft..
- B. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 2140.
- C. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
1. Uplift Rating: UL 60.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 VERTICAL-RIB, SEAMED-JOINT, STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dimensional Metals, Inc.; Span-Lock SL20. Manufacturers of comparable products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. ATAS International, Inc.
 2. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 3. Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
 4. PAC-CLAD; Petersen; a Carlisle company.
 5. TitanTek Architectural Metal Panels.
- B. Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and mechanically seaming panels together.
1. Structural Support: Over solid deck.
 2. Material: Metallic-coated steel.
 3. Seam Type: Manufacturer's standard.
 4. Panel Profile: Intermediate stiffening (pencil) ribs symmetrically spaced between ribs if oil-canning is a concern, or flat pan if not.
 5. Panel Coverage: 16 inches.
 6. Panel Height: 2.0 inches.
 7. Clips: Two piece, floating, designed to accommodate thermal movement.

- a. Steel Clips: Manufacturer's standard thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
- b. Clip Spacing: As indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
- B. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels.
- E. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in 10-foot-long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- F. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, 22ga. thickness; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles and with welded top box and integral full-length cricket.

Fabricate curb subframing of 0.060-inch-nominal thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.

1. Insulate roof curb with 1-inch-thick, rigid insulation.

G. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.

H. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.

C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.

1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.

6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 1. Nominal Thickness: 0.034 inch.
 2. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.

2.7 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.

- a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 1. Apply over the entire roof surface.
- B. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.
- C. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

- C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - 1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
 - 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 3. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
 - 4. Watertight Installation:
 - a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
 - b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 - c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 - 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
 - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

- I. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.
 - 1. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- J. Roof Curbs: Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.
- K. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113.16

SECTION 074213.13 - FORMED METAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 074293 "Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical metal panel assembly, 8'-0" wide by 4'-0" high, including corner, reveal, soffits, supports, attachments, and accessories.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.

- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:
 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS

- A. Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Flush-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels Type A: Formed with vertical panel edges and a flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dimensional Metals, Inc., FP1012. Manufacturers of comparable products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. ATAS International, Inc.
 - b. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
 - d. PAC-CLAD; Petersen; a Carlisle company.
 - e. TitanTek Architectural Metal Panels
 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Nominal Thickness: 0.034 inch.
 - b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.

- c. Color: Sandstone.
- C. Flush-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels Type B: Formed with vertical panel edges and a flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dimensional Metals, Inc., FP1012. Manufacturers of comparable products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. ATAS International, Inc.
 - b. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
 - d. PAC-CLAD; Petersen; a Carlisle company.
 - e. TitanTek Architectural Metal Panels
 - 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Nominal Thickness: 0.034 inch.
 - b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: Royal Blue.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.

- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.

7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
 5. Flash and seal panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings.
- E. Watertight Installation:
1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
 2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal wall panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- B. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213.13

SECTION 074293 - SOFFIT PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal soffit panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 074213.13 "Formed Metal Wall Panels" for lap-seam metal wall panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Metal soffit panels.

B. Product Data Submittals:

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.

- 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

- 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

- 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:

- 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

2. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. Provide metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid panels (unless otherwise indicated) formed with vertical panel edges and a flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dimensional Metals, Inc.; FP1012 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ATAS International, Inc.
 - b. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
 - d. PAC-CLAD; Petersen; a Carlisle company.
 - e. TitanTek Architectural Metal Panels
 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Preprimed by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Nominal Thickness: 0.034 inch.
 - b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
 3. Panel Coverage: 12 inches.
 4. Panel Height: 1.0 inch.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 hot-dip galvanized coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant types recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal soffit panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - 1. Soffit Framing: Wire tie or clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 7. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
1. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
- E. Watertight Installation:
1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
 2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling, and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to achieve waterproof performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074293

SECTION 075323 - EPDM ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Adhered ethylene-propylene-diene-monomer (EPDM) roofing system.
 - 2. Roof insulation.
 - 3. Walkways.
- B. Section includes installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in ribs of roof deck. Sound-absorbing insulation strips are furnished under Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 053100 "Steel Decking" for sound-absorbing insulation installed under this Section.
 - 2. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
 - 4. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings and roof edge flashings.
 - 5. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.

8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav listing.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
 1. Layout and thickness if insulation.
 2. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 3. Flashing details at penetrations.
 4. Tapered insulation, thickness, and slopes.
 5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane and fastening spacings and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
 6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
 7. Tie-in with air barrier.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
 1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
 2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For components of roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and flashings shall remain watertight.
1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746, ASTM D 4272, or the Resistance to Foot Traffic Test in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. FM Approvals' RoofNav Listing: Roof membrane, base flashings, and component materials shall comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 or FM Approvals 4470 as part of a roofing system, and shall be listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals Certification markings.
1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60.
- D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class C; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-TERPOLYMER (EPDM) ROOFING

- A. EPDM Sheet: ASTM D 4637/D 4637M, Type II, scrim or fabric internally reinforced, EPDM sheet.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.](#)
 - b. [Firestone Building Products.](#)
 - c. [Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.](#)
 2. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
 3. Exposed Face Color: Black.
 4. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.

2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
 - 1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil-thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
- C. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- D. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- E. Roof Vents: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
 - 1. Size: Not less than 4-inch diameter.
- F. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- G. Seaming Material: Manufacturer's standard, synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 3-inch-wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film.
- H. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant, colored to match membrane roofing.
- I. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.
- J. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- K. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, prepunched.
- L. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- M. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, molded pipe boot flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.
 - 1. Provide white flashing accessories for white EPDM membrane roofing.

2.4 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by EPDM roof membrane manufacturer, approved for use in FM Approvals' RoofNav-listed roof assemblies.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
 - 1. Compressive Strength: 20 psi.
 - 2. Size: 48 by 48 inches.

3. Thickness:
 - a. As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
 1. Material: Match roof insulation.
 2. Minimum Thickness: 1/4 inch.
 3. Slope:
 - a. Roof Field: 1/4 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Saddles and Crickets: 1/2 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
 1. Modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive.
 2. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
 3. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.

2.6 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
 1. Size: Approximately 36 by 60 inches
 2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips in accordance with acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing roofing system.

3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Metal Decking:
 - 1. Install premolded roll or strip of glass or mineral fiber sound-absorbing installation provided by Section 053100 "Steel Decking" per manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows and with long joints continuous at right angle to flutes of decking.
 - a. Locate end joints over crests of decking.
 - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - f. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.

- g. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.
 - 1) Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' RoofNav for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
- 3. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
 - a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - e. Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - h. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
 - i. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
 - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

3.5 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll membrane roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- F. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement.
 - 1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
 - 3. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by roofing system manufacturer.

- H. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape.
 - 1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
- I. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- J. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.7 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:
 - a. Locations indicated on Drawings.
 - b. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
 - 2. Provide 6-inch clearance between adjoining pads.
 - 3. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.
- B. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.9 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 075323

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- 2. Formed equipment support flashing.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
- 2. Section 075323 "Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing" for installing sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.
- 3. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for copings and roof edges.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- 2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
- 3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
- 4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
- 5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
- 6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
- 7. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
- 8. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
- 9. Include details of special conditions.
- 10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. FM Approvals Listing: Manufacture and install copings roof edge flashings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-60. Identify materials with name of fabricator and design approved by FM Approvals.
- D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting regional design pressure.

- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

- 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

- B. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.

- 1. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2B (bright, cold rolled).

- a. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
 - b. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 - 1) Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
 - 2) When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

- 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
 - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:

- a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.

- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.

- 1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F or higher.

2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.

- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.

1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.

- a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
- b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.

2. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

- C. Solder:

1. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.

- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.

- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.

2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 3. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Unless otherwise noted on the drawings, visual intent for sheet metal fabrications is as follows:
1. Fabrications within the plane of exterior walls and visible from grade are to be finished to match the copings, roof-edge specialties, roof-edge drainage systems, or panel product to which they interface.
 2. Fabrications at or above the roof plane and not visible at grade or not interfacing with factory finish coated fabrications are to be stainless steel.
- B. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- C. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick

D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.
2. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick

E. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.

F. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

C. Apply slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective

coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.

1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
 6. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Coat concealed side of stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws and substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- C. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches. Secure in waterproof manner.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." And Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- D. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend beyond wall openings.

3.6 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

3.7 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- B. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copings.
 - 2. Roof-edge specialties.
 - 3. Roof-edge drainage systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for custom- and site-fabricated sheet metal flashing and trim.
 - 3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
 - 2. Include details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
 - 3. Indicate profile and pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
 - 4. Detail termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 - 5. Include details of special conditions.
- C. Samples: For each type of roof specialty and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.

- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Roofing-System Warranty: Roof specialties are included in warranty provisions in Section 075323 " Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing System."
- B. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. FM Approvals' Listing: Manufacture and install copings and roof-edge specialties that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-60.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof-edge specialties tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the regional design pressures acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COPINGS

- A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements and with approval of roof warranty provider, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Architectural Products Company.](#)
 - b. [ATAS International, Inc.](#)
 - c. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
 - d. [Metal-Era, Inc.](#)
 - e. [OMG, Inc.](#)
 - f. [PAC-CLAD; Petersen Aluminum Corporation; a Carlisle company.](#)
 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Coping Caps: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, nominal thickness as required to meet performance requirements or as indicated on drawings, whichever is thicker.
 - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 3. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 4. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: face leg hooked to continuous cleat with back leg fastener exposed, fabricated from coping-cap material.
 - a. Face-Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous stainless steel.

2.3 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES

- A. Canted Roof-Edge Fascia and Gravel Stop: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous formed galvanized-steel sheet cant, 0.028 inch thick, minimum, with extended vertical leg terminating in a drip-edge cleat. Provide matching corner units.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements and with approval of roof warranty provider, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Architectural Products Company.](#)
 - b. [ATAS International, Inc.](#)
 - c. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
 - d. [Metal-Era, Inc.](#)
 - e. [OMG, Inc.](#)
 - f. [PAC-CLAD; Petersen Aluminum Corporation; a Carlisle company.](#)
 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Fascia Covers: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, nominal thickness as required to meet performance requirements or as indicated on drawings, whichever is thicker.
 - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.

- b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 4. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
 5. Receiver: Manufacturer's standard material and thickness.

2.4 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. [Architectural Products Company](#).
 2. [ATAS International, Inc.](#)
 3. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
 4. [Metal-Era, Inc.](#)
- B. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 ft., with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Nominal 0.034-inch thickness.
 2. Gutter Profile: Style F in accordance with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
 3. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 4. Gutter Supports: Straps with finish matching the gutters.
 5. Gutter Accessories: Flat ends.
- C. Downspouts: Shape as indicated on the drawings complete with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
1. Metallic-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.034-inch thickness.
- D. Finishes:
1. Metallic-Coated Steel: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality..
1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

2.6 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
- B. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
 2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 - 1. Apply continuously under copings and roof-edge specialties.
 - 2. Coordinate application of self-adhering sheet underlayment under roof specialties with requirements for continuity with adjacent air barrier materials.
- B. Felt Underlayment: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
- C. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
 - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
 - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
 - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

3.4 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
 - 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at 30-inch centers or manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.
 - 2. Interlock face-leg drip edge into continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 24-inch centers or manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements. Anchor back leg of coping with screw fasteners and elastomeric washers at 24-inch centers for manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

3.5 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM

- A. Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.

- B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 30 inches apart. Attach ends with rivets and seal with sealant to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
 - 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 ft. apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
 - 1. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- D. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in elastomeric sealant.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal fillings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077100

SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof hatches.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
- 2. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for safety railing systems not attached to roof-hatch curbs.
- 3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
- 4. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured fasciae, copings, gravel stops, gutters and downspouts, and counterflashing.
- 5. Division 23 Mechanical Sections for roof curbs associated with mechanical equipment.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
 3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
 4. Required clearances.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

2.2 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, straight sides or stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Loads: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal uplift load.
- D. Hatch Material: Stainless steel sheet.
1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard or ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2D, directional polish finish.
- E. Construction:
1. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch-thick, polyisocyanurate board].
 - a. R-Value: Minimum 12.0 according to ASTM C1363.
 2. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.
 3. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
 4. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 6. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.

7. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height that is constant. Equip hatch with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
- F. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, stainless steel spring latch with turn handles, stainless steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
 1. Provide two-point latch on lids larger than 84 inches.
- G. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a complete installation; attached to roof hatch and complying with 29 CFR 1910.23 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
 2. Posts and Rails: Galvanized-steel pipe, 1-1/4 inches in diameter or galvanized-steel tube, 1-5/8 inches in diameter or aluminum tube.
 3. Flat Bar: Galvanized steel, 2 inches high by 3/8 inch thick.
 4. Maximum Opening Size: System constructed to prevent passage of a sphere 21 inches in diameter.
 5. Self-Latching Gate: Fabricated of same materials and rail spacing as safety railing system. Provide manufacturer's standard hinges and self-latching mechanism.
 6. Post and Rail Tops and Ends: Weather resistant, closed or plugged with prefabricated end fittings.
 7. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members.
 8. Fabricate joints exposed to weather to be watertight.
 9. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, finished to match railing system.
 10. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

2.3 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
 1. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B221, manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used; otherwise mill finished.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C726, nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F, thickness as indicated.
- C. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.

- D. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- E. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- F. Underlayment:
 - 1. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
 - 2. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
 - 3. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
- G. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
 - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 3. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- H. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- I. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- J. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- K. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum and stainless steel roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
 - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof-Hatch Installation:
 - 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
 - 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
- D. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 077253 - SNOW GUARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Two-Rail-type, seam-mounted snow guards with ice flags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans showing layouts and attachment details of snow guards.
 - 1. Include details of rail-type snow guards.
- C. Samples:
 - 1. Rail-Type Snow Guards: Bracket, 12-inch-long rail, and installation hardware.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For snow guards, include analysis reports signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Include calculation of number and location of snow guards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that the engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of snow guard, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating load at failure of attachment to roof system identical to roof system used on this Project.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit adhesive-mounted snow guards to be installed, and adhesive cured, according to adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design snow guards, including attachment to roofing material, as applicable for attachment method, based on the following:
1. Roof snow load.
 2. Snow drifting
 3. Roof slope.
 4. Roof type.
 5. Roof dimensions.
 6. Roofing substrate type and thickness.
 7. Snow guard type.
 8. Snow guard fastening method and strength.
 9. Snow guard spacing.
 10. Coefficient of Friction Between Snow and Roof Surface: 0.
 11. Factor of Safety: 2.
- B. Performance Requirements: Provide snow guards that withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- C. Structural Performance: Snow guards shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
1. Snow Loads: 20 PSF ground snow.

2.2 RAIL-TYPE SNOW GUARDS

- A. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Alpine SnowGuards, a division of Vermont Slate & Copper Services, Inc.](#)
 - b. [LMCurbs.](#)
 - c. [PMC Industries, Ltd.](#)
 - d. [Rocky Mountain Snow Guards, Inc.](#)
 - e. [S-5! Attachment Solutions; Metal Roof Innovations, Ltd.](#)
 2. Description: Snow guard rails fabricated from metal pipes, bars, or extrusions, anchored to brackets and equipped with two rails.
 3. Brackets and Baseplate: ASTM B209 aluminum; mill finished or ASTM B209 aluminum; clear anodized or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 stainless steel; mill.
 4. Bars: Type 304 stainless steel.
 - a. Profile: Round.

5. Seam clamps: ASTM B221 aluminum extrusion or ASTM B85/B85M aluminum casting with stainless steel set screws incorporating round nonpenetrating point; designed for use with applicable roofing system to which clamp is attached. Provider to coordinate clamp profile with metal roof panel rib profile.
6. Accessories: Ice flags or snow clips designed to mount to round bars of rail-type snow guards to retard migration of snow and ice beneath the bar(s) and between standing seams

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, snow guard attachment, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and prepare substrates for bonding snow guards.
- B. Prime substrates according to snow guard manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install snow guards according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Space rows as indicated on Shop Drawings.
 2. Space rows as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Attachment for Standing-Seam Metal Roofing:
 1. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate metal roofing or fastening methods that void metal roofing finish warranty.
 2. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:
 - a. Install brackets or seam clamps to vertical ribs in straight rows.
 - b. Secure with stainless steel set screws, incorporating round nonpenetrating point, on same side of standing seam.
 - c. Torque set screw according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - d. Install cross members to brackets.
 - e. Install ice flags

END OF SECTION 077253

SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction, at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections, and in smoke barriers.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
 - 1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
 - 3) FM Global in its "Building Materials Approval Guide."

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
 - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.

- C. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- D. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
 - 2. Substrate primers.
 - 3. Collars.
 - 4. Steel sleeves.

2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced intumescent elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

2.4 MIXING

- A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer

speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
 - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.
 - 1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 feet from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.
- B. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.
 - 6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Provide products meeting required assemblies as tested by one of the following testing agencies acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

1. UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
 2. Where Intertek Group-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek Group's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems."
 3. Where FM Global-approved systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in FM Global's "Building Materials Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fire Stops."
- B. Penetration Firestopping of the following: Systems with No Penetrating Items; Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing; Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing; Systems for Electrical Cables; Systems for Cable Trays with Electric Cables; Systems for Insulated Pipes; Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants; Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants; and Systems for Groupings of Penetrants.
1. F-Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
 2. T-Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
 3. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.

END OF SECTION 078413

SECTION 078443 - JOINT FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
 - 2. Non-rated fire safing with batt mineral wool.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies and for wall identification.
 - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for firestop tracks for metal-framed partition heads.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each joint firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that joint firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install joint firestopping systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by joint firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure joint firestopping systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that joint firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate joint firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
 - 1. Perform joint firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Joint Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Joint firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."

2.2 FIRE SAFING

- A. Fire Safing Batts: Mineral-Wool Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

2.3 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Joint Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which joint firestopping systems are installed. Joint firestopping systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide joint firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor, or roof in or between which it is installed.
- C. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install elastomeric fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by joint firestopping system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing fire-resistive joint systems, clean joints immediately to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of elastomeric fill materials or compromise fire-resistive rating.
 - 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with elastomeric fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install fire safing batts singly into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps at locations and conditions noted on the drawings.
- C. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support elastomeric fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing elastomeric fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- D. Install elastomeric fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Elastomeric fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply elastomeric fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
 - 3. For elastomeric fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Joint Identification: Identify joint firestopping systems with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of joint edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove or joint firestopping system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
1. The words "Warning - Joint Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
 4. Date of installation.
 5. Manufacturer's name.
 6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2393.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or joint firestopping systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace joint firestopping systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing joint firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess elastomeric fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure joint firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Wall-to-Wall, Joint Firestopping Systems:
1. Assembly Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
 2. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
- B. Head-of-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint Firestopping Systems:
1. Assembly Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
 2. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
- C. Bottom-of-Wall, Joint Firestopping Systems:
1. Assembly Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.

2. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.

D. Perimeter Joint Firestopping Systems:

1. Integrity Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
2. Linear Opening Width: As indicated.
3. F-Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.

END OF SECTION 078443

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
2. Urethane joint sealants.
3. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
4. Butyl joint sealants.
5. Latex joint sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in paved roads, parking lots, walkways, and curbing.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
 - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.

3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
- C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- B. Urethane, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
- C. Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
- D. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

2.4 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

2.5 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C 1311.

2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) Type O (open-cell material) Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.
- ### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS
- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile at horizontal traffic joints according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
 - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 - 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

B. Protect preformed joint seals from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so seals are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated seals immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
- b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT.

3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
- b. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
- c. Joints between metal panels.
- d. Joints between different materials listed above.
- e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, and louvers.
- f. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry and concrete walls and partitions.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces utilizing preformed joint sealants.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces indicated to receive preformed joint sealants.
 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT. Coordinate with preformed joint seal manufacturer.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows, and elevator entrances.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:

- a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant:
 - a. Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
- H. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Aluminum thresholds.
 - b. Sill plates.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hollow-metal work.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for embedding anchors for hollow metal work into masonry construction.
 - 2. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow metal doors.
 - 3. Division 09 "Painting" for field painting hollow metal doors and frames.
 - 4. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 7. Details of accessories.
 - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

- C. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow-metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final Door Hardware Schedule.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of hollow-metal door and frame assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal work palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
 - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal work vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow-metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Provide an assembly with gaskets listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

2.3 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct interior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2. Interior doors and frames except fire-rated doors and frames.
 - 1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
 - 2. Doors:

- a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - c. Face: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
3. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 4. Exposed Finish: Prime.
- C. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 3. Interior fire-rated doors and frames.
1. Physical Performance: Level A according to SDI A250.4.
 2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - c. Face: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
 3. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Uncoated, steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 4. Exposed Finish: Prime.
- 2.4 EXTERIOR HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
- A. Construct exterior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
 - B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 3.
 1. Physical Performance: Level A according to SDI A250.4.
 2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.

- 1) Thermal-Rated Doors: Provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 2.1 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu when tested according to ASTM C 1363.
3. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
4. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
 2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.
 3. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
 4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, and as follows:
 1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

- G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- I. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- J. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Hollow-Metal Doors:
 - 1. Steel-Stiffened Door Cores: Provide minimum thickness 0.026 inch, steel vertical stiffeners of same material as face sheets extending full-door height, with vertical webs spaced not more than 6 inches apart. Spot weld to face sheets no more than 5 inches o.c. Fill spaces between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.
 - 2. Fire Door Cores: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
 - 3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Provide beveled or square edges at manufacturer's discretion.
 - 4. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets.
 - 5. Bottom Edge Closures: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
 - 6. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
 - 7. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.
- C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
 - 1. Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
 - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.

4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
 5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 16 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c., to match coursing, and as follows:
 - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
 - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
 - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
 - c. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each frame.
 - d. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches o.c.
 6. Head Anchors: Two anchors per head for frames more than 42 inches wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
 7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and edge channels from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.
- F. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and louvers where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with mitered hairline joints.
 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.

3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.

2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- B. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.

1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - c. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 - d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
 - e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - f. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 - g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that will be filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.
 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames where wall type is indicated to have a minimum STC rating.
 4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
 5. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 6. In-Place Metal-Stud Partitions: Secure slip-on drywall frames in place according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors:
 - a. Between Door and Frame Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch to 1/4 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 - c. At Bottom of Door: 3/4 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 - d. Between Door Face and Stop: 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.

3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors and gaskets according to NFPA 105.
 - D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
 - B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.
 - C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - D. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
 - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
 - 1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
 - 2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 - 3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
 - 4. Undercuts.
 - 5. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
 - 6. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.
- C. Mark each door on top rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
 - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
 - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.
- B. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
 - 2. Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
 - 3. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 4. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
- C. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control, based on testing according to UL 1784.
- D. Particleboard-Core Doors:
 - 1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1 or Grade LD-2.

2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware and as follows:
 - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
 - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
 - c. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
3. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.

E. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:

1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
 - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf.
 - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf

F. Mineral-Core Doors:

1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware and as follows:
 - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking.
 - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
 - c. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - a. Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf per WDMA T.M.-10.

2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
2. Species: White oak.
3. Cut: Rift cut.
4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Pleasing match.
5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Balance match.
6. Exposed Vertical Edges: Same species as faces.
7. Construction: Five or seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
8. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.

2.4 LIGHT FRAMES

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.
3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
 1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
 2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Factory finish doors that are indicated to receive transparent finish.
- D. Factory finish doors where indicated in schedules or on Drawings as factory finished.
- E. Transparent Finish:
 1. Grade: Premium.
 2. Finish: Finish: WDMA TR-4 conversion varnish or WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 4. Effect: Filled finish.
 5. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
 - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
 - 1. Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
 - 2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
 - 1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
 - b. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
 - 2. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware." for cylinder locks and keying.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, fire ratings, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection and temperature-rise limit ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Flush Interior Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:
 - 1. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
 - 2. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
 - 3. Door Size: As indicated on the drawings.
 - 4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
 - 5. Latch and Lock: Prepared for mortise cylinder with interior release.
- B. Flush Exterior Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:
 - 1. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
 - 2. Locations: Wall and ceiling. Provide upward swinging insulated access panels for horizontal applications as noted.
 - 3. Door Size: As indicated on the drawings.
 - 4. 2 inch insulation minimum R-8 value.
 - 5. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.064 inch 16 gage, factory primed.
 - 6. Latch and Lock: Prepared for mortise cylinder with interior release.

2.3 FIRE-RATED ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:
1. Description: Door face flush with frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal; with exposed flange, self-closing door, and concealed hinge.
 2. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
 3. Door Size: As indicated on the drawings.
 4. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
 5. Temperature-Rise Rating: 450 deg F at the end of 30 minutes.
 6. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.036 inch, 20 gage, factory primed.
 7. Frame Material: Same material finish as door, Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage.
 8. Latch and Lock: Self-latching door hardware, prepared for mortise cylinder with interior release.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 or A60 metallic coating.
- D. Frame Anchors: Same material as door face.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
- D. Latch and Lock Hardware:
1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches and locks required to hold doors tightly closed.
 2. Mortise Cylinder Preparation: Where indicated, prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 083113

SECTION 083613 - SECTIONAL DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes electrically operated sectional doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
 - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC A117.1.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Failure of components or operators before reaching required number of operation cycles.
 - c. Faulty operation of hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
 - e. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.
 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.
1. Obtain operators and controls from sectional door manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Sectional doors shall comply with performance requirements specified without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the design wind loads.
1. Design Wind Load: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward and outward.
 2. Testing: According to ASTM E 330.
 3. Deflection Limits: Design sectional doors to withstand design wind loads without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
 - a. Deflection of door sections in horizontal position (open) shall not exceed 1/120 of the door width.
 - b. Deflection of horizontal track assembly shall not exceed 1/240 of the door height.
 4. Operability under Wind Load: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft. wind load, acting inward and outward.

2.3 STEEL SECTIONAL-DOOR ASSEMBLY

- A. Steel Sectional Door: Provide sectional door formed with hinged sections and fabricated so that finished door assembly is rigid and aligned with tight hairline joints; free of warp, twist, and deformation; and complies with requirements in DASMA 102.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Overhead Door Corporation; Series 470 or a comparable product. Manufacturers of comparable products include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Clopay Building Products.
 - b. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
- B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 10,000 operation cycles. One operation cycle is complete when door is opened from closed position to the open position and returned to closed position.
- C. R-Value: Minimum 9.83 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu.
- D. Steel Sections: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet with G60 or G90 zinc coating.
1. Section Thickness: 2 inch.
 2. Section Faces:
 - a. Exterior Face: Fabricated from single sheets, not more than 24 inches high; with horizontal meeting edges rolled to continuous, interlocking, keyed, rabbeted, shiplap, or tongue-in-groove, weather- and pinch-resistant seals and reinforcing flange return.
 - 1) Steel Sheet Thickness: 0.0217-inch nominal coated thickness.
 - 2) Surface: Manufacturer's standard, ribbed.
 - b. Interior Face: Enclose insulation completely within steel exterior facing and interior facing material, with no exposed insulation. Provide the following interior-facing material:
 - 1) Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: With minimum nominal coated thickness of 0.0172 inch.
 3. End Stiles: Enclose open ends of sections with channel end stiles formed from galvanized-steel sheet welded to door section.
 4. Section Reinforcing: Horizontal and diagonal reinforcement as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Provide galvanized-steel bars, struts, trusses, or strip steel, formed to depth and bolted or welded in place.
 - a. Bottom Section: Reinforce section with a continuous channel or angle conforming to bottom-section profile and allowing installation of astragal (weatherseal).
 - b. Hardware Locations: Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
 5. Thermal Insulation: Insulate interior of steel sections with door manufacturer's standard insulation of type indicated below:
 - a. Polystyrene.

- 1) Thermal Value: R-value of 9.83.
- E. Track Configuration: Standard-lift track.
- F. Weatherseals: Fitted to bottom and top and around entire perimeter of door.
- G. Locking Devices: None required. Electric motor with brake will act as door lock.
- H. Counterbalance Type: Cable Drums and Shaft: Cast-aluminum cable drums mounted on torsion shaft and grooved to receive door-lifting cables as door is raised.
 1. Mount counterbalance mechanism with manufacturer's standard ball-bearing brackets at each end of torsion shaft.
- I. Electric Door Operator: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended by door manufacturer for door and operation cycles specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
 2. Control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6; with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24 V ac or dc.
 3. Safety: Listed in accordance with UL 325 by a qualified testing agency for commercial or industrial use.
 4. Usage Classification: Medium duty, up to 12 cycles per hour and up to 50 cycles per day.
 5. Operator Type: Jackshaft, side mounted.
 6. Motor: Reversible-type with controller (disconnect switch) for interior, clean, and dry motor exposure at maintenance bays. Exterior, dusty, wet, or humid motor exposure at wash bays. Use adjustable motor-mounting bases for belt-driven operators.
 - a. Motor Size: As required to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. (203 mm/s) and not more than 12 in./sec. (305 mm/s), without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor 1/2 hp (373 W).
 - b. Electrical Characteristics:
 - 1) Phase: Polyphase.
 - 2) Volts: 115 V.
 7. Limit Switches: Equip motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
 8. Obstruction Detection: Automatic external entrapment protection consisting of automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. Activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.
 - a. Monitored Entrapment Protection: Photoelectric sensor and Electric sensor edge on bottom section designed to interface with door-operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor and complying with requirements in UL 325.
 9. Control Station: Flush mounted, three-position (open, close, and stop) control.
 - a. Operation: Push button interior and key exterior.

- b. Interior-Mounted Unit: Full-guarded, surface-mounted, standard-duty, weatherproof-type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure.
 - c. Features: Provide the following:
 - 1) Radio-control operation.
- 10. Emergency Manual Operation: Push-up type designed so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
 - 11. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.
 - 12. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor can be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.

2.4 SECTIONAL-DOOR ASSEMBLY – GLAZED ALUMINUM

- A. Glazed Aluminum Sectional Door: Provide sectional door formed with hinged sections and fabricated so that finished door assembly is rigid and aligned with tight hairline joints; free of warp, twist, and deformation; and complies with requirements in DASMA 102.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Overhead Door Corporation; Series 521 or a comparable product. Manufacturers of comparable products include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Clopay Building Products.
 - b. Wayne Dalton; a division of Overhead Door Corporation.
- B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 25,000 operation cycles. One operation cycle is complete when door is opened from closed position to the open position and returned to closed position.
- C. R-Value: Minimum 3.43 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu.
- D. Aluminum Sections: ASTM B221 extruded-aluminum stile and rail members of alloy and temper standard with manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated; in minimum thickness required to comply with requirements; and with overlapped or interlocked weather- and pinch-resistant seal at meeting rails.
 - 1. Door-Section Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - 2. Center Stile Width: 2-11/16 inches.
 - 3. End Stile Width: 3-5/16 inches.
 - 4. Intermediate Rail Pair Width: 3-11/16 inches.
 - 5. Top Rail Width: 2-3/8 inches.
 - 6. Bottom Rail Width: 3-3/4 inches.
 - 7. Stiles and Rails: 6063 – T6 aluminum.
 - 8. Section Reinforcing: Continuous horizontal and diagonal reinforcement as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Ensure that reinforcement does not obstruct vision lites.
 - a. Hardware Locations: Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
 - 9. Insulated Stiles and Rails: Fill stiles and rails manufacturer's standard polyurethane expanding foam.

10. Glazed Panels: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-framed section with glazing sealed with glazing tape and aluminum glazing bead. Glazing as follows:
 - a. ½ inch Low E Insulated glazing.
 11. Finish and Color:
 - a. Anodized Finish: Clear anodized.
- E. Track Configuration: Standard-lift track.
- F. Weatherseals: Fitted to bottom and top and around entire perimeter of door.
- G. Locking Devices: None required. Electric motor with brake will act as door lock.
- H. Counterbalance Type: Cable Drums and Shaft: Cast-aluminum cable drums mounted on torsion shaft and grooved to receive door-lifting cables as door is raised.
 1. Mount counterbalance mechanism with manufacturer's standard ball-bearing brackets at each end of torsion shaft.
- I. Electric Door Operator: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended by door manufacturer for door and operation cycles specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
 2. Control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6; with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24 V ac or dc.
 3. Safety: Listed in accordance with UL 325 by a qualified testing agency for commercial or industrial use.
 4. Usage Classification: Medium duty, up to 12 cycles per hour and up to 50 cycles per day.
 5. Operator Type: Manufacturer's standard for door requirements. Trolley-type required due to mounting height/location limitations.
 6. Motor: Reversible-type with controller (disconnect switch) for interior, clean, and dry motor exposure. Use adjustable motor-mounting bases for belt-driven operators.
 - a. Motor Size: As required to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. (203 mm/s) and not more than 12 in./sec. (305 mm/s), without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor 1/2 hp (373 W).
 - b. Electrical Characteristics:
 - 1) Phase: Polyphase.
 - 2) Volts: 115 V.
 7. Limit Switches: Equip motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
 8. Obstruction Detection: Automatic external entrapment protection consisting of automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. Activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.

- a. Monitored Entrapment Protection: Photoelectric sensor and Electric sensor edge on bottom section designed to interface with door-operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor and complying with requirements in UL 325.
9. Control Station: Flush mounted, three-position (open, close, and stop) control.
 - a. Operation: Key.
10. Emergency Manual Operation: Push-up type designed so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
11. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.
12. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor can be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Metal Finish: Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products (AMP 500-06)" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 1. Anodized Aluminum Finish: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
 - a. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Tracks:
 1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing, spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
 2. Hang horizontal track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.

- C. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.
- D. Power-Operated Doors: Install according to UL 325.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICES

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weather-resistant fit around entire perimeter.
- D. Touch-up Painting: Immediately after welding galvanized materials, clean welds and abraded galvanized surfaces and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

END OF SECTION 083613

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "door hardware" for door hardware.
 - 2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass.
 - 3. Division 26 Sections for connections to power system and for low-voltage wiring.
 - 4. Division 28 Sections for coordination with electronic access control system.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Installer.

B. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
- b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
- d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
- e. Failure of operating components.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. [EFCO Corporation](#).
 2. [Kawneer North America, an Arconic company](#).
 3. [Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope™](#).
 4. YKK AP.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- B. Structural Loads:
1. Wind Loads: As determined by regional weather patterns and as required by local codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding 1/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.

- a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch clearance between framing members and operable units.
- D. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
- 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- E. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
- 1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
 - 2. Entrance Doors:
 - a. Pair of Doors: Maximum air leakage of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
 - b. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of 0.5 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
- 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- G. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
- 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have U-factor of not more than 0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
 - 2. Condensation Resistance:
 - a. Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 55 as determined according to NFRC 500.
 - b. Entrance Doors: CRF of not less than 52 as determined in accordance with AAMA 1503.
- H. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
- 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- 2.3 FRAMING
- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction at exterior systems: Thermally broken.
 2. Construction at interior systems: Nonthermal.
 3. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 4. Glazing Plane: Front.
 5. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
 6. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
 7. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 8. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- B. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:
1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
 - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
 - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
 - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch-thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.
 2. Door Design: As indicated Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width.
 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
 4. Finish: Match adjacent storefront framing finish.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
 - 1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D2000 molded neoprene or ASTM D2287 molded PVC.
 - 2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701/702, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.
- C. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.

2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers. Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, fabricated from 300 series stainless steel.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch-thick stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M of type recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system, screw-spline system, or head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
 - 2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

E. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

F. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.

4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.4 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Entrance Door Hardware:

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Use parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
 - a. Swinging doors.
- 2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".
- 2. Section 081416 "Flush Wood Doors".
- 3. Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for entrance door weather stripping and seals.
- 4. Division 26 sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.
- 5. Division 28 sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system and fire alarm system.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware and keying with Owner.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Conference participants shall include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant.

B. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Conference participants shall include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant.
- 2. Incorporate conference decisions into keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flow of traffic and degree of security required.
 - b. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - c. Address for delivery of keys.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product in each finish specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
 - 1. Tag Samples with full product description to coordinate Samples with door hardware schedule.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.
- D. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Coordinate door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
 - 1. Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
 - 2. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in door hardware schedule in the Contract Documents.
 - 3. Content: Include the following information:
 - a. Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, size, and material of each door and frame.
 - b. Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
 - c. Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
 - d. Fastenings and other installation information.
 - e. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and designations contained in door hardware schedule.
 - f. Mounting locations for door hardware.
 - g. List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.
- E. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
- B. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals.

- B. Schedules: Final door hardware and keying schedule.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and of an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
 - 1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
 - 2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedule.
- B. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is currently certified by DHI as an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 - b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise indicated below:
 - a. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated doors are indicated, provide door hardware complying with NFPA 80 that is listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-

protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that complies with requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
 - 1. Air Leakage Rate: Maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. at the tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg of water.
- C. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- D. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design", the DOT's "ADA Standards for Transportation Facilities" and ICC A117.1.
 - 1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
 - 2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
 - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
 - b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf applied parallel to door at latch.
 - c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
 - 4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.
 - 5. Adjust spring hinges so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 1.5 seconds to move to the closed position.

2.3 HINGES

- A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.
- B. Requirements:
 - 1. Provide three-knuckle, ball bearing hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
 - 2. 1-3/4 inch thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - 3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - 4. 2 inches or thicker doors:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high

5. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
6. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
 - a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
 - b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
 - c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
 - d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
 - e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
7. Width of hinges: 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) at 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, and 5 inches (127 mm) at 2 inches (51 mm) or thicker doors. Adjust hinge width as required for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
 - a. Doors 36 inches (914 mm) wide or less furnish hinges 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high; doors greater than 36 inches (914 mm) wide furnish hinges 5 inches (127 mm) high, heavy weight or standard weight as specified.

2.4 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
 1. Mortise Locks: Minimum 3/4-inch latchbolt throw.
 2. Deadbolts: Minimum 1-inch bolt throw.
- C. Lock Backset: 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Lock Trim:
 1. Levers: Cast.
 2. Escutcheons (Roses): Cast.
 3. Dummy Trim: Match lever lock trim and escutcheons.
- E. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.
 1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.
- F. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Operational Grade 1, Security Grade 1; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.
- G. Interconnected Locks: BHMA A156.12; Grade 1; Series 5000.

2.5 AUXILIARY LOCKS

- A. Bored Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.36: Grade 1; with strike that suits frame.

2.6 AUTOMATIC AND SELF-LATCHING FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Automatic Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Type 25; minimum 3/4-inch throw; with dust-proof strikes; designed for mortising into door edge. Include wear plates.

2.7 EXIT DEVICES AND AUXILIARY ITEMS

- A. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: BHMA A156.3.

2.8 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
- B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.
 - 1. Core Type: Interchangeable.
- C. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 4 construction master keys.

2.9 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.
 - 1. Master Key System: Change keys and a master key operate cylinders.
 - a. Provide three cylinder change keys and five master keys.
 - 2. Existing System:
 - a. Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.
 - 3. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.
- B. Keys: Nickel silver.
 - 1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
 - a. Notation: Information to be furnished by Owner.

2.10 OPERATING TRIM

- A. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6; stainless steel unless otherwise indicated.

2.11 ACCESSORIES FOR PAIRS OF DOORS

- A. Coordinators: BHMA A156.3; consisting of active-leaf, hold-open lever and inactive-leaf release trigger; fabricated from steel with nylon-coated strike plates; with built-in, adjustable safety release.
- B. Astragals: BHMA A156.22.

2.12 SURFACE CLOSERS

- A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

2.13 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Wall-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16.
- B. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.
- C. Provide door stops at each door leaf:
 - 1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide convex type where mortise type locks are used and concave type where cylindrical type locks are used.
 - 2. Where wall stop cannot be used, provide heavy duty concealed mounted overhead stop.

2.14 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AND GASKETING

- A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- B. Maximum Air Leakage: When tested according to ASTM E283 with tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg, as follows:
 - 1. Smoke-Rated Gasketing: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.
 - 2. Gasketing on Single Doors: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.
 - 3. Gasketing on Double Doors: 0.50 cfm per foot of door opening.
- C. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.
- D. Requirements:
 - 1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping (including door sweeps, seals, and astragals) and gasketing systems (including smoke, sound, and light) as scheduled. Match finish of other items.
 - 2. Size of thresholds:
 - a. Saddle Thresholds: 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by jamb width by door width
 - b. Bumper Seal Thresholds: 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width
 - 3. Provide door sweeps, seals, and astragals only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.

2.15 METAL PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

- A. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from 0.050-inch-thick stainless steel; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.
- B. Provide kick plates at the following locations:

1. Interior and exterior sides of interior doors at storage rooms and janitor closets.
2. Interior side of exterior doors at storage rooms.
3. Size: 8 inches high by 2 inches less width of door on single doors, 1 inch less width of door on pairs.

2.16 SILENCERS

- A. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal frames.
- B. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
- C. Omit where gasketing is specified.

2.17 FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rating labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
 1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
 2. Fire-Rated Applications:
 - a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:
 - 1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames.
 - 2) Strike plates to frames.
 - 3) Closers to doors and frames.
 - b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following unless door blocking is provided:
 - 1) Surface hinges to doors.
 - 2) Closers to doors and frames.
 - 3) Surface-mounted exit devices.
 3. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.

4. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

2.18 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated below:
 1. Hinges at Exterior Doors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
 2. Push Plates, Pulls, and Push Bars: BHMA 630 (US32D)
 3. Protection Plates: BHMA 630 (US32D)
 4. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630 (US32D)
 5. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
 6. Wall Stops: BHMA 630 (US32D)
 7. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum
 8. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.

1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
 2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying schedule.
- E. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Stops: Provide wall stops or overhead stops for doors unless otherwise indicated. Do not install floor stops.
- G. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.
- H. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- I. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 70 degrees and so that closing time complies with accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware.

END OF SECTION 087100

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, and storefront framing.
 - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.
 - 1. Coated insulated glass.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For glass.
- B. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricated-Glass Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of fabricated glass units who is approved and certified by primary glass manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- C. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- D. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- E. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
 - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
- E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1376.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Vitro Architectural Glass; Solarban 60 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Guardian Glass; SunGuard.
 - b. Pilkington North America.
 - c. Viracon, Inc.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard polyisobutylene and polysulfide, polyisobutylene and silicone, polyisobutylene and hot-melt butyl, or polyisobutylene and polyurethane primary and secondary sealants.
 2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction Aluminum with mill or clear anodic finish.
 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
- C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
- D. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

- E. Glazing Sealant: Acid-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

2.7 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
 - 1. Neoprene complying with ASTM C 864.
 - 2. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
 - 3. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
 - 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber complying with ASTM C 1115.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned neoprene, EPDM, silicone, or thermoplastic polyolefin rubber gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
 - 1. Application: Use where soft compression gaskets will be compressed by inserting dense compression gaskets on opposite side of glazing or pressure applied by means of pressure-glazing stops on opposite side of glazing.

2.8 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
 - 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 - 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 - 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.10 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge

damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.

- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.

- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.

1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.

C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.8 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Glass Type for interior doors, sidelights and windows with the continuous perimeter stops: Clear heat-strengthened or fully tempered float glass as required by location.

1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
2. Safety glazing required.

3.9 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Vision Exterior glass: Low-e-coated, clear insulating glass (Typical exterior glass):

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Vitro Solarban 60 (2) + Clear
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
3. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6.0 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: Float glass, Heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as required.
5. Interspace Content: Air.
6. Indoor Lite: Float glass, Heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as required.
7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
8. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent minimum.
9. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .29 maximum.
10. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .27 maximum.
11. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: .39 maximum.
12. Provide safety glazing labeling.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
 - 2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior non-load-bearing wall studs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Studs and Runners: Provide documentation that framing members' certification is according to SIFA's "Code Compliance Certification Program for Cold-Formed Steel Structural and Non-Structural Framing Members."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Horizontal Deflection: For wall assemblies, limited to 1/240 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft..

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.

1. Steel Studs and Runners:
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, minimum 0.0296 inch.
 - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
 1. Clip System: Clips designed for use in head-of-wall deflection conditions that provide a positive attachment of studs to runners while allowing 1-1/2-inch minimum vertical movement.
 2. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
 3. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
 4. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

- D. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.

- F. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.

- G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, minimum 0.0296 inches.
 2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

- H. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

- I. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch.

3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

- J. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.0296 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

- B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.

- C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, in size indicated on Drawings, or if not 1 by 3/16 inch by length.

- D. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings or if not indicated minimum of 1-1/2 inches.

- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):

1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.

2. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.

- a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings or if not indicated minimum of 0.0329 inch

- b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.

- a. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings or if not indicated minimum of 0.0329 inch.

4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.

- a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

- F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.

1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:

1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.
 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
 - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
 - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
 - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Direct Furring:
 - 1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- F. Z-Shaped Furring Members:
 - 1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches o.c.

2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.

- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

- F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior gypsum board.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
 - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
 - 3. Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch. Unless noted to be 1/2 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Impact-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C 1629/C 1629M.
 - 1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
 - 2. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C 1629/C 1629M, meets or exceeds Level 2 requirements.
 - 3. Indentation: ASTM C 1629/C 1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
 - 4. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C 1629/C 1629M, meets or exceeds Level 2 requirements.
 - 5. Hard-Body Impact: ASTM C 1629/C 1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements according to test in Annex A1.
 - 6. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 7. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- E. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Core: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. Expansion (control) joint.

2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 4 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound or drying-type, all-purpose compound.

2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
 - 1. Laminating adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.

- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge

trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:

- 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces above 8'-0" unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- 3. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
- 4. Impact-Resistant Type: Vertical surfaces to 8'-0" unless otherwise indicated.
- 5. Mold-Resistant Type: In restrooms, bathrooms, janitor's closets.

- B. Single-Layer Application:

- 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
- 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

- C. Multilayer Application:

- 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.

3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
 4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.
- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings and according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 3. L-Bead: Use where indicated.

3.5 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 1. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view IN NON-OCCUPIED AREAS, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099100 "Painting."
 2. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view IN OCCUPIED AREAS, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099100 "Painting."

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Porcelain tile.
- 2. Thresholds at floor level transitions.
- 3. Waterproof membrane.
- 4. Metal edge strips at flush floor transitions.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.

- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."

- C. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

- D. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain [tile of each type and color or finish] [tile of each type] [tile of each color or finish] [tile] from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 - 1. Stone thresholds.
 - 2. Waterproof membrane.
 - 3. Cementitious backer units.
 - 4. Metal flooring transitions.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.

- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

A. Porcelain Tile Type – Glazed Floor Tile.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Daltile Volume 1.0 Concrete Look or comparable product.
2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
3. Face Size: 12 x 12 inches.
4. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
5. Thickness: 5/16 inch.
6. Face: Plain with square edges.
7. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
8. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
9. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Cove Base: 6 inches x 12 inches.
 - b. Base Cap: 3 inches x 12 inches surface bullnose.
 - c. Internal Corners: Cove Base Corner.

2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Slate Thresholds: ASTM C629/C629M, Classification II Interior, with fine, even grain and honed finish.
1. Description:
 - a. Uniform, black, blue-black, gray, blue-gray, or green stone (pending tile selections) and unfading.
- C. Material to be homogeneous solid filled plastic resin (Dupont Corian or equal). Color to be selected by Architect.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Gypsum Panel: ASTM C1658/C1658M, with fiberglass mat partially or completely embedded into the core.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.

- b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - c. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
 - d. USG Corporation.
2. Core: Matching adjacent painted gypsum board product.
 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
 4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.

2.6 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and ANSI A118.12 and is recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Waterproof Membrane, Fluid Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [ARDEX Americas.](#)
 - b. [Laticrete International, Inc.](#)
 - c. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)

2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
 1. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
 3. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
 1. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Metal Flooring Transitions: Profile designed specifically for flooring applications; height to match tile and setting-bed thickness.
- C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds or other coatings, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.
- D. Substrate Flatness:

1. For tile shorter than 15 inches, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to variation of 1/4 inch in 10 ft. from the required plane, and no more than 1/16 inch in 12 inches when measured from tile surface high points.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE

- A. Install tile backing panels and treat joints in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.
- B. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- C. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with "Referenced Standards" Article in the Evaluations and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
 1. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
 2. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.
- D. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Tile floors composed of tile 8 by 8 inches or larger.
 - b. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
- E. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- F. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- G. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- H. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- I. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in staggered brickwork pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.

2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- K. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
1. Do not extend crack isolation membrane under thresholds. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- L. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile.
- 3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANEL
- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.
- 3.6 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.7 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:

1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F125-Full; thinset mortar on crack isolation membrane.
 - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
 - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 - c. Crack Isolation Membrane: Fluid-applied membrane.
 - d. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.

B. Interior Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:

1. TCNA W245: Thinset mortar on glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board over waterproof membrane.
 - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
 - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 - c. Waterproof Membrane: Fluid-applied membrane.
 - d. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockup in one classroom to, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical ceiling area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
 - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E 1264.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.3 2X4 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Acoustical Panel Ceiling is based on the following product manufactured by **Armstrong World Industries P.O. Box 3001 Lancaster, PA 17604 www.armstrong.com**. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.
 - 1. Ultima™ Item 1938 with DuraBrite™ acoustically transparent water-repellent membrane
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. CertainTeed Corp.
 - 2. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
 - 3. Conwed Designscape Corp.
- C. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E 1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Classification: Provide panels as follows:
 - 1. Type and Form: Type IV, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
 - 2. Pattern: E (lightly textured).

E. Description:

1. Color: White.
2. LR: Not less than 0.86.
3. NRC: Not less than 0.70.
4. CAC: Not less than 35.
5. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.
6. Thickness: 3/4 inch.
7. Modular Size: 24 by 48 inches.
8. Scrubbable and water-repellent and sag resistant. Meets USDA/FSIS guidelines for use in food processing areas.
9. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273, ASTM D 3274, or ASTM G 21 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C 635/C 635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
- B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: butt-edge type.
 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
 4. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel or aluminum.
 5. Cap Finish: Painted white.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 2. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch-diameter wire.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch-diameter bolts.

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, edge moldings and trim shall be provided by panel and suspension system manufacturer.
- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
 - 1. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye

- screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
 11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 2. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
 - a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
 2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
- 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES
- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Thermoplastic-rubber base.
 - 2. Rubber stair accessories.
 - 3. Rubber molding accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockup to verify installation of rubber base at radius concrete block corners to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.

3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johnsonite; a Tarkett company; Baseworks Thermoset Rubber (Type TS) or a comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 1. Style and Location:
 - a. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient floor coverings.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- D. Height: 4 inches.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.2 RUBBER STAIR ACCESSORIES

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
 3. Nora Systems, Inc.
 4. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
- C. Stair Treads: ASTM F2169.

1. Type: TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset).
2. Class: 2 (pattern; embossed, grooved, or ribbed).
3. Group: 2 (with contrasting color for the visually impaired).
4. Nosing Style: Square, adjustable to cover angles between 60 and 90 degrees.
5. Nosing Height: 2 inches.
6. Thickness: 1/4 inch and tapered to back edge.
7. Size: Lengths and depths to fit each stair tread in one piece or, for treads exceeding maximum lengths manufactured, in equal-length units.
8. Integral Risers: Smooth, flat; in height that fully covers substrate.

- D. Landing Tile: Matching treads unless otherwise indicated; produced by same manufacturer as treads and recommended by manufacturer for installation with treads, unless indicated to be provided by other flooring Section(s).
- E. Locations: Provide rubber stair accessories in areas indicated.
- F. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and patterns.

2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. [Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.](#)
 2. [VPI Corporation.](#)
- B. Description: Rubber carpet edge for glue-down applications, reducer strip for resilient floor covering, joiner for tile and carpet, transition strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As required to accommodate elevation change and protect edge of flooring material.
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas where finish flooring materials of differing elevations abut each other, where transition strips are not otherwise indicated by the floor material specification Section(s) or drawings, and where metal edge strips indicated elsewhere in this specification are not appropriate as determined by the Architect.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Stair-Tread Nose Filler: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
- D. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish, nominal 2 inches wide, of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:
 - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 12 inches in length.
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
 - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Stair Accessories:
 - 1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
 - 2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
 - 3. For treads installed as separate, equal-length units, install to produce a flush joint between units.
- C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.

- C. Protect resilient products from marks, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid vinyl floor tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
 - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Patcraft; a division of Shaw Industries, Inc; Local Reserve or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Flooring, Inc.
 - 2. Shaw Contract Group; a Berkshire Hathaway company
 - 3. Tarkett.
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
 - 1. Class: Class III, Printed Film Vinyl Tile.
 - 2. Type: B, Embossed Surface.
- C. Thickness: 0.157 inch.
- D. Size: 7 by 48 inches.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's full range.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.

- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 80 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
 - 1. Lay tiles square with room axis.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
 - 1. Lay tiles with grain running in one direction.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
 - 1. Do not install resilient flooring over expansion joints.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096519

SECTION 096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Resinous flooring system with epoxy body.
 - a. Application Method: Troweled in place resinous (urethane) mortar with flake (epoxy) broadcast topping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each resinous flooring system required, 5 inches (150 mm) square, applied to a rigid backing.
- C. Product Schedule: Use resinous flooring designations indicated in Part 2 and room designations indicated on Drawings in product schedule.
- D. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.
- E. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer (applicator) who is experienced in applying resinous flooring systems similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and who is acceptable to resinous flooring manufacturer.
 1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.
 2. Contractor shall have completed at least 10 projects of similar size and complexity.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, through one source from a single manufacturer, with not less than ten years of successful experience in manufacturing and installing principal materials described in this section. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
- C. Manufacturer Field Technical Service Representatives: Resinous flooring manufacture shall retain the services of Field Technical Service Representatives who are trained specifically on installing the system to be used on the project.

1. Field Technical Services Representatives shall be employed by the system manufacturer to assist in the quality assurance and quality control process of the installation and shall be available to perform field problem solving issues with the installer.
- D. Mockups: Apply mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Apply full-thickness mockups on 48-inch- square floor area selected by Architect.
 - a. Include 48-inch length of integral cove base.
 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- E. Pre-installation Conference:
 1. General contractor shall arrange a meeting not less than thirty days prior to starting work.
 2. Attendance:
 - a. General Contractor
 - b. Architect/Owner's Representative.
 - c. Manufacturer/Installer's Representative.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.
- B. Store materials to prevent deterioration from moisture, heat, cold, direct sunlight, or other detrimental effects. Store material per product data sheet.
- C. All materials used shall be factory pre-weighed and pre-packaged in single, easy to manage batches to eliminate on site mixing errors. No on site weighing or volumetric measurements allowed.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
 1. Maintain material and substrate temperature between 65 and 85 deg F (18 and 30 deg C) during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.

- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application, unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.
- D. Concrete substrate shall be properly cured. A vapor barrier must be present for concrete subfloors on or below grade. Otherwise, an osmotic pressure resistant grout must be installed prior to the resinous flooring
 - 1. It is assumed no vapor barrier exists below existing slab on grade. Osmotic pressure resistant grout shall be installed.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer shall furnish a single, written warranty covering both material and workmanship for a period of (1) one full years from date of installation, or provide a joint and several warranty signed on a single document by material manufacturer and applicator jointly and severally warranting the materials and workmanship for a period of (1) one full year from date of installation. A sample warranty letter must be included with bid package or bid may be disqualified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RESINOUS FLOORING

- A. Basis of Design Product: Resinous flooring and accessories are based on the following system(s) manufactured by Stonhard, Inc. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification,
 - 1. Stonhard, Inc.; Stontec TRF®.
- B. System Characteristics:
 - 1. Color and Pattern: Select from manufactures standards
 - 2. Wearing Surface: Standard
 - 3. Integral Cove Base: As indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Overall System Thickness: Nominal 3/16".
- C. System Components: Manufacturer's standard components that are compatible with each other and as follows:
 - 1. Primer:
 - a. Material Basis: Stonhard Urethane Primer.
 - b. Resin: Urethane.
 - c. Formulation Description: (2) two component, low viscosity, urethane.
 - d. Application Method: Squeegee and nap roller.
 - e. Number of Coats: (1) one.
 - 2. Body Coat(s):
 - a. Material Basis: Stonclad UR
 - b. Resin: Urethane 100% solids.

- c. Formulation Description: 4 components.
- d. Application Method: Screed and Metal trowel.
 - 1) Thickness of Coats: 1/8", with primer coat
 - 2) Number of Coats: One.
- 3. Under coat: Bonding coat for vinyl flake broadcast.
 - a. Material Basis: Stontec epoxy undercoat.
 - b. Resin: Epoxy
 - c. Formulation Description: 100% solids.
 - d. Type: Pigmented.
 - e. Number of Coats: one
- 4. Broadcast: Vinyl Flake.
 - a. Material Basis: Stontec Flake
 - b. Formulation Description: Decorative flake for broadcasting.
 - c. Type: Tweed (chips to be mixed in Mfg. facility)
 - d. Finish: standard.
 - e. Number of Coats: one.
 - f. Size: 1/16".
- 5. Topcoat:
 - a. Material Basis: Stonseal CA7.
 - b. Resin: Aliphatic polyaspartic.
 - c. Formulation Description: Two-component, UV resistant
 - d. Type: Clear.
 - e. Finish: Gloss.
 - f. Number of Coats: one or two. Dependant on finish expectation.

Note: Components listed above are the basis of design intent; all bids will be compared to this standard including resin chemistry, color, wearing surface, thickness, and installation procedures, including number of coats. Contractor shall be required to comply with all the requirements of the Specifications and all of the components required by the Specifications, whether or not such products are specifically listed above.

2.2 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Patching, Leveling and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. No Single component or cementitious materials.
- B. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or produced by resinous flooring manufacturer for type of service and joint condition indicated.
- C. Osmotic Pressure Resistant Grout: Stonfil OP2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean and dry substrate for resinous flooring application.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
 - 1. Mechanically prepare substrates as follows:
 - a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup or Diamond Grind with a dust free system.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates meet the following requirements.
 - a. Perform in situ probe test, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with application only after substrates do not exceed a maximum potential equilibrium relative humidity of 85 percent.
 - b. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 6 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab in 24 hours.
- C. Apply osmotic pressure-resistant grout where concrete substrate exceeds manufacturer's allowable relative humidity.
- D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Resinous materials only.
- E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
 - 1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
 - 2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
 - 3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, provide joint in resinous flooring to comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - a. Apply joint sealant to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Apply primer where required by resinous system, over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.

- C. Integral Cove Base: Apply cove base mix to wall surfaces before applying flooring. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and details including those for taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, and top coating of cove base. Round internal and external corners. Refer to detail drawings.
- D. Mix and apply mortar base as indicated for flooring system and at coverage rates recommended in writing by manufacturer. Screed mortar materials, compact and smooth mortar base with steel finishing trowels.
- E. Apply undercoat bonding for broadcast flakes. squeegee in thickness indicated for flooring system. Back roll liquids with finish rollers.
- F. Broadcasts: Vinyl chip, in number of coats indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer
- G. Apply topcoat(s) in number of coats indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 TERMINATIONS

- A. Chase edges to "lock" the coating system into the concrete substrate along lines of termination.
- B. Penetration Treatment: Lap and seal coating onto the perimeter of the penetrating item by bridging over compatible elastomer at the interface to compensate for possible movement.
- C. Trenches: Continue coating system into trenches to maintain monolithic protection. Treat cold joints to assure bridging of potential cracks.
- D. Treat floor drains by chasing the coating to lock in place at point of termination.

3.4 JOINTS AND CRACKS

- A. Treat control joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection.
- B. Treat cold joints and construction joints and to maintain monolithic protection on horizontal and vertical surfaces as well as horizontal and vertical interfaces.
- C. Vertical and horizontal contraction and expansion joints are treated by installing backer rod and compatible sealant after coating installation is completed. Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer for traffic conditions and chemical exposures to be encountered.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Material Sampling: Owner may at any time and any numbers of times during resinous flooring application require material samples for testing for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Owner will engage an independent testing agency to take samples of materials being used. Material samples will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.

2. Testing agency will test samples for compliance with requirements, using applicable referenced testing procedures or, if not referenced, using testing procedures listed in manufacturer's product data.
3. If test results show applied materials do not comply with specified requirements, pay for testing, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces coated with unacceptable materials, and reapply flooring materials to comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND CURING

- A. Cure resinous flooring materials in compliance with manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent contamination during stages of application and prior to completion of curing process. Close area of application for a minimum of 24 hours.
- B. Protect resinous flooring materials from damage and wear during construction operation. Where temporary covering is required for this purpose, comply with manufacturer's recommendations for protective materials and method of application. General Contractor is responsible for protection and cleaning of surfaces after final coats.
- C. Cleaning: Remove temporary covering and clean resinous flooring just prior to final inspection. Use cleaning materials and procedures recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer. General Contractor is responsible for cleaning prior to inspection.

END OF SECTION 096723

SECTION 096813 - TILE CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes modular carpet tile.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's written installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 16 sq. ft..

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard."

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard" for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. More than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, and runs.
 - b. Dimensional instability.
 - c. Excess static discharge.
 - d. Loss of tuft-bind strength.
 - e. Loss of face fiber.
 - f. Delamination.
 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALK-OFF CARPET TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Carpet tile is based on the following carpet tile manufactured by Shaw Industries Group, Inc.. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.
1. Steppin Out Bon Jour II Tile.
 2. Pattern and Color: Quarter Turn + Color As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
- B. Construction:
1. Fiber: Pet Polyester.
 2. Construction: Needlebond Rib.
 3. Density: 5,284 oz./cu. yd.

4. Tufted Weight: 50.5 oz/yd²
5. Stitches: 0.0 stitches per inch.
6. Finished Pile Thickness: 0.344 inches.
7. Backing System: Polypropylene, Ecworx Tile.
8. Size: 24 by 24 inches.
9. Applied Soil-Resistance Treatment: Manufacturer's standard material.
10. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard material.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. J&J Industries
2. Mohawk Industries.
3. Mannington Mills, Inc.

2.2 CARPET TILE

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Carpet tile is based on the following carpet tile manufactured by Shaw Industries Group, Inc.. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.

1. Diffuse + Disperse; Diffuse 24x24.
2. Pattern and Color: Ashlar Pattern + Color As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

B. Construction:

1. Fiber Content: 100 percent nylon.
2. Fiber Type: Ecosolution Q100 Nylon.
3. Pile Characteristic: Multi-Level Pattern Loop.
4. Density: 6,261 oz./cu. yd.
5. Stitches: 8.5 stitches per inch.
6. Gage: 1/12.
7. Face Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd.
8. Backing System: Synthetic, Ecworx Tile.
9. Size: 24 by 24 inches.
10. Applied Soil-Resistance Treatment: Manufacturer's standard material.
11. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard material.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. J&J Industries
2. Mohawk Industries.
3. Mannington Mills, Inc.

2.3 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for

installed carpet tile, and are recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.

- C. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance.
- B. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and that surfaces are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
 - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
 - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI's "Carpet Installation Standards" and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider, and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard," Section 18, "Modular Carpet" and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: Partial glue down; install periodic tiles with releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive.
- C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Maintain pile-direction patterns recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet tile as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI's "Carpet Installation Standard," Section 20, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096813

SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates including:
 - 1. Steel and iron.
 - 2. Galvanized metal.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Paint is based on the products manufactured by The Sherwin Williams Company. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.
- B. Products: Manufacturers, subject to compliance with requirements, include but are not limited to those listed below. Provide comparable products identified per paint categories in the Interior Painting Schedule.
 - 1. [Benjamin Moore & Co.](#)
 - 2. [Glidden Professional.](#)
 - 3. [PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.](#)

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
 - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.

2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 3. Wood: 15 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
 - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
 - 4. SSPC-SP 11.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - a. Uninsulated metal piping.

- b. Pipe hangers and supports.
- c. Metal conduit.
- d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel and Iron Substrates:
 - 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System, MPI EXT 5.1C:
 - a. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.
 - 1) S-W Pro Industrial DTM Semi-Gloss.
- B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
 - 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
 - 1) S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer.
 - 2) Primer may be eliminated if metal is shop primed.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.
 - 1) S-W Pro Industrial DTM Semi-Gloss.

END OF SECTION 099113

SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
 - 3. Steel and iron.
 - 4. Gypsum board.
 - 5. Cotton or canvas insulation covering.
 - 6. ASJ insulation covering.
 - 7. Plastic.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1(Matte): Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2(Flat): Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3(Eggshell): 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4(Satin): 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5(Semi-gloss): 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6(Gloss): 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7(high Gloss): More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Coating Maintenance Manual: Provide coating maintenance manual including area summary with finish schedule, area detail designating location where each product/color/finish was used,

product data pages, material safety data sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Paint is based on the products manufactured by The Sherwin Williams Company. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.
- B. Products: Manufacturers, subject to compliance with requirements, include but are not limited to those listed below. Provide comparable products identified per paint categories in the Interior Painting Schedule.
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. Glidden Professional.
 - 3. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 1. Ten percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.
 - 2. Bidder shall assume more than one wall paint color may be selected for the interior of any room or area. One dominant wall color to be used throughout, with up to four additional colors used for accent walls (one wall painted one of four accent colors per space), evenly distributed throughout the project. The presence of accent color locations on the drawings shall supersede this requirement.
 - 3. Assume a separate color than those accounted for above at the following locations:
 - a. Interior metal doors and frames.
 - b. Hard ceilings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 - 3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 3.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.

2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
1. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - h. Other items as directed by Architect.
 2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:
 - 1. Latex System, MPI INT 3.1A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
 - 1) Loxon® Concrete & Masonry Primer Sealer, A24W8300.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.
- B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces for interior concrete surfaces not scheduled to receive a finish:
 - 1. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System, MPI INT 3.2G:
 - a. First Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, matching topcoat.
 - b. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
 - 1) H&C Clarishield Water-Based Wet Look Concrete Sealer
- C. CMU Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System, MPI INT 4.2A:
 - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
 - 1) PrepRite Block Filler, B25W25.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.
- D. Steel Substrates:
 - 1. Latex over Shop-Applied Quick-Drying Shop Primer System, MPI INT 5.1X (hollow metal doors, frames, stairs, railings, structure, and any other steel items exposed to view and reachable by pedestrian traffic):

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for shop application, MPI #275.
 - 1) Chemical Coatings Kem-Flash 500 Primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.
2. Water-Based Dry-Fall System, MPI INT 5.1C (Exposed steel decking and overhead structure):
 - a. Prime Coat: Waterborne acrylic, matching topcoat (3.75-6.0 mils wet, 1.5-2.4 mils dry).
 - b. Topcoat: Waterborne acrylic, (3.75-6.0 mils wet, 1.5-2.4 mils dry).
 - 1) Pro Industrial Multi-Surface Acrylic Matte, B66-1571 Series.
- E. Gypsum Board Substrates for ceilings and soffits:
1. Latex over Latex Sealer System, MPI INT 9.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.
- F. Gypsum Board Substrates except restrooms:
1. Latex over Latex Sealer System, MPI INT 9.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.
- G. Gypsum Board Substrates at restrooms:
1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System, MPI INT 9.2B:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.
- H. Cotton or Canvas and ASJ Insulation-Covering Substrates: Including pipe and duct coverings.
 - 1. Latex System, MPI INT 10.1A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600.
 - b. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.
 - I. Plastic Substrates:
 - 1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System, MPI INT 6.8A (plastic piping):
 - a. Prime Coat (where not factory primed): Primer, bonding, solvent based, MPI #69.
 - 1) White Pigmented Shellac.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
 - 1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Low Sheen.

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 101100 - VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Visual display board assemblies.
 - 2. Display rails.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, finishes, and accessories for visual display units.
- B. Shop Drawings: For visual display units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment to other work.
 - 2. Show locations of panel joints. Show locations of field-assembled joints for factory-fabricated units too large to ship in one piece.
 - 3. Include sections of typical trim members.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of visual display unit indicated, for units with factory-applied color finishes, and as follows:
 - 1. Samples of facings for each visual display panel type, indicating color and texture.
 - 2. Actual factory-finish color samples, applied to aluminum substrate.
 - 3. Include accessory Samples to verify color selected.
- D. Product Schedule: For visual display units.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each visual display unit, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For visual display units to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver factory-fabricated visual display units completely assembled in one piece. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured unit size, or if unit size is impracticable to ship in one piece, provide two or more pieces with joints in locations indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install visual display units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
 - b. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Life of the building.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARD ASSEMBLY

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.; Series 3 Wallboards or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. AJW Architectural Products.
 - 2. ASI Visual Display Products; ASI Group.
 - 3. Marsh Industries, Inc.
- B. Visual Display Board Assembly: factory fabricated.
 - 1. Assembly: markerboard and tackboard.
 - 2. Corners: Square.

3. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
 4. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 5. Mounting Method: Direct to wall.
- C. Markerboard Panel: Porcelain-enamel-faced markerboard panel on core indicated.
1. Color: White.
- D. Tackboard Panel: Plastic-impregnated-cork tackboard panel on core indicated.
1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- E. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Fabricated from not less than 0.062-inch-thick, extruded aluminum; standard size and shape.
1. Field-Applied Trim: Manufacturer's standard, screw-on trim with Phillips flat-head screws.
 2. Aluminum Finish: Clear anodic finish.
- F. Joints: Make joints only where total length exceeds maximum manufactured length. Fabricate with minimum number of joints, balanced around center of board, as acceptable to Architect as indicated on approved Shop Drawings.
- G. Combination Assemblies: Provide hidden spline between abutting sections of visual display panels.
- H. Chalktray: Manufacturer's standard; continuous.
1. Box Type: Extruded aluminum with slanted front, grooved tray, and cast-aluminum end closures.
- I. Display Rail: Manufacturer's standard, extruded-aluminum display rail with plastic-impregnated-cork insert, end stops, and continuous paper holder, designed to hold accessories.
1. Size: 1 inch high by full length of visual display unit.
 2. Map Hooks and Clips: Two map hooks with flexible metal clips for every 48 inches of display rail or fraction thereof.
 3. Flag Holder: One for each room.
 4. Tackboard Insert Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
 5. Aluminum Color: Match finish of visual display assembly trim.

2.3 DISPLAY RAILS

- A. [Basis-of-Design Product](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc](#); Deluxe Map & Display Rail or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. [AJW Architectural Products](#).
 2. ASI Visual Display Products.
 3. Marsh Industries, Inc.
- B. Aluminum Display Rail: Manufacturer's standard, extruded-aluminum display rail with plastic-impregnated-cork tackable insert, designed to hold accessories.

- C. Tackable Insert Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- D. Size: 2 inches high by length indicated on Drawings.
- E. End Stops: Aluminum.

2.4 MARKERBOARD PANELS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Markerboard Panels: Balanced, high-pressure, factory-laminated markerboard assembly of three-ply construction, consisting of moisture-barrier backing, core material, and porcelain-enamel face sheet with low-gloss finish. Laminate panels under heat and pressure with manufacturer's standard, flexible waterproof adhesive.
 - 1. Face Sheet Thickness: 0.021 inch uncoated base metal thickness.
 - 2. Manufacturer's Standard Core: Minimum 7/16 inch thick, with manufacturer's standard moisture-barrier backing.
 - 3. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard moisture-resistant thermoplastic type.

2.5 TACKBOARD PANELS

- A. Tackboard Panels:
 - 1. Facing: 1/4-inch-thick, plastic-impregnated cork.
 - 2. Core: Manufacturer's standard.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheet: PEI-1002, with face sheet manufacturer's standard two- or three-coat process.
- B. Plastic-Impregnated-Cork Sheet: Seamless, homogeneous, self-sealing sheet consisting of granulated cork, linseed oil, resin binders, and dry pigments that are mixed and calendared onto fabric backing; with washable vinyl finish and integral color throughout; with surface-burning characteristics indicated.
- C. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, tempered.
- D. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-1.
- E. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
- F. Fiberboard: ASTM C208 cellulosic fiber insulating board.
- G. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063.
- H. Adhesives for Field Application: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining adhesive for use with specific type of panels, sheets, or assemblies; and for substrate application; as recommended in writing by visual display unit manufacturer.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for proper preparation and backing for visual display units.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances, such as dirt, mold, and mildew, that could impair the performance of and affect the smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.
- C. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, projections, depressions, and substances that will impair bond between visual display units and wall surfaces.
- D. Prepare recesses for sliding visual display units as required by type and size of unit.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Factory-Fabricated Visual Display Board Assemblies: Attach concealed clips, hangers, and grounds to wall surfaces and to visual display board assemblies with fasteners at not more than 16 inches o.c. Secure tops and bottoms of boards to walls.
- C. Visual Display Board Assembly Mounting Heights: Install visual display units at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below.
 - 1. Mounting Height for Kindergarten: 22 inches above finished floor to top of chalktray.
 - 2. Mounting Height for Grades 1 through 3: 25 inches above finished floor to top of chalktray.

3. Mounting Height for Grades 4 through 6: 29 inches above finished floor to top of chalktray.
4. Mounting Height for Grades 7 through 9: 32 inches above finished floor to top of chalktray.
5. Mounting Height for Grades 10 through 12: 34 inches above finished floor to top of chalktray.

D. Display Rails: Install rails at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at height indicated below. Attach to wall surface with fasteners at not more than 16 inches o.c.

1. Mounting Height: Coordinate mounting height and locations with Architect.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean visual display units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one removable cleaning instructions label to visual display unit in each room.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- C. Cover and protect visual display units after installation and cleaning.

END OF SECTION 101100

SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Dimensional characters.
 - a. Cast dimensional characters.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Illuminated: Illuminated by lighting source integrally constructed as part of the sign unit.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
 - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Product Schedule: For dimensional letter signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: For exterior fabricated channel dimensional characters, allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cast Characters: Characters with uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, and as follows:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - b. Gemini Incorporated.
 - c. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.
 2. Character Material: Cast aluminum.
 3. Character Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 4. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of character.
 5. Finishes:
 - a. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, in color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 6. Mounting: Projecting studs.
 7. Typeface: Owner's typestyle.

2.3 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTER MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.

- B. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless steel devices unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Projecting Studs: Threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 - 3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
 - 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 - 5. Internally brace dimensional characters for stability, to meet structural performance loading without oil-canning or other surface deformation, and for securing fasteners.
 - 6. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
 - 7. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

2.8 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 - 1. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
 - 2. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
 - 3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Mounting Methods:
 - 1. Backing Plate: Remove debris from substrate surface and install backing plate in position, so that signage is correctly located and aligned.
 - 2. Projecting Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.

- a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place spacers on studs, place sign in position, and push until spacers are pinched between sign and substrate, embedding the stud ends in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
- b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place spacers on studs, place sign in position with spacers pinched between sign and substrate, and install washers and nuts on stud ends projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101419

SECTION 101423 - PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Room-identification signs.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary Project identification signs and for temporary information and directional signs.
- 2. Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for labels, tags, and nameplates for plumbing systems and equipment.
- 3. Division 23 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for labels, tags, and nameplates for HVAC systems and equipment.
- 4. Division 26 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for labels, tags, and nameplates for electrical equipment. and "Emergency and Exit Lighting" for illuminated exit sign units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.
- B. Illuminated: Illuminated by lighting source integrally constructed as part of the sign unit.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For panel signs.

- 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
- 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
- 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.

- 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

- D. Sign Schedule: Use same designations specified or indicated on Drawings or in a sign schedule.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
 - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL SIGNS, GENERAL

- A. Unless indicated otherwise, signs shall match existing panel signs installed in the most recently constructed portion of the building.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for signs.

2.3 SIGNS

- A. Panel Room Identification Signage: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles fabricated from solid sheet acrylic, laminated polymer, or laminated polycarbonate and as follows:
 - 1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Photopolymer or Sandblasted polymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated over subsurface graphics to acrylic or phenolic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
 - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of sign, but no less than 0.125 inch.
 - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied vinyl film.
 - c. Subsurface Graphics: Slide-in changeable insert where indicated.

- d. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
 - a. Edge Condition, Vertical Edges: Square cut.
 - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Rounded to 3/8 inch radius unless otherwise indicated.
3. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with two-face tape or hook-and-loop tape for positioning and secured with countersunk flathead through fasteners at each corner.
4. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and variable content as scheduled. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.4 PANEL-SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- B. Polycarbonate Sheet: ASTM C 1349, Appendix X1, Type II (coated, mar-resistant, UV-stabilized polycarbonate), with coating on both sides.
- C. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signage, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 1. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fastener Heads: For nonstructural connections, use flathead or oval countersunk screws and bolts with tamper-resistant Allen-head or spanner-head slots unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Through Fasteners: Exposed metal fasteners matching sign finish, with type of head indicated, installed in predrilled holes.
 3. Inserts: Furnish inserts to be set by other trades into concrete or masonry work.
- B. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, 0.045 inch thick, with adhesive on both sides.
- C. Hook-and-Loop Tape: Manufacturer's standard two-part tape consisting of hooked part on sign back and looped side on mounting surface.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.

1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 3. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Surface-Engraved Graphics: Machine engrave characters and other graphic devices into panel surface indicated to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth.
1. Engraved Opaque Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved graphics with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Face-Engraved Clear Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved copy with manufacturer's standard enamel. Apply manufacturer's standard opaque background color coating to back face of acrylic sheet.
 3. Engraved Plastic Laminate: Engrave through exposed face ply of plastic-laminate sheet to expose contrasting core ply.
- C. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- D. Subsurface-Engraved Graphics: Reverse engrave back face of clear face-sheet material. Fill resulting copy with manufacturer's standard enamel. Apply opaque manufacturer's standard background color coating over enamel-filled copy.
- E. Shop- and Subsurface-Applied Vinyl: Align vinyl film in final position and apply to surface. Firmly press film from the middle outward to obtain good bond without blisters or fishmouths.
- F. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:
1. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner. Furnish two blank inserts for each sign for Owner's use.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of signage work.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
 - 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Room-Identification Signs and Other Accessible Signage: Install in locations on walls as indicated and according to accessibility standard.
- C. Panel Informational Sign Schedule:
 - 1. Sign Type A:
 - a. Sign Size: 5 inches X 3 inches.
 - b. Character Size: As recommended by the manufacturers and approved by the Architect.
 - c. Text/Message: "EXIT"
 - 2. Sign Type B:
 - a. Sign Size: 8 inches X 8 inches.
 - b. Character Size: As recommended by the manufactures and approved by the Architect.
 - c. Text/Message: ROOM NUMBER, ROOM NAME.
 - 1) Signs at all offices and program rooms shall provide for changeable message inserts
 - 3. Sign Type C:
 - a. Sign Size: 8 inches X 9 inches.
 - b. Character Size: As recommended by the manufactures and approved by the Architect.
 - c. Text/Message: ROOM NUMBER, ROOM NAME.
 - 1) Restroom entrances shall include graphic symbols.

4. Signs at all doors at all storage and mechanical rooms:
 - a. Sign Size: 4 inches high X 8 inches wide.
 - b. Character Size: As recommended by the manufactures and approved by the Architect.
 - c. Text/Message: ROOM NUMBER, ROOM NAME.
 - 1) Stairs, mechanical rooms, storage rooms, janitor's closets, servery.

D. Mounting Methods:

1. Through Fasteners: Drill holes in substrate using predrilled holes in sign as template. Countersink holes in sign if required. Place sign in position and flush to surface. Install through fasteners and tighten.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423

SECTION 102113 - TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-polymer toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
 - 2. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
 - 2. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of toilet compartment material indicated.
 - 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.
 - 2. Architect will select multiple colors and surface textures for which physical samples are to be provided for selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment, from manufacturer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements in GSA's CID-A-A-60003, "Partitions, Toilets, Complete."
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, or another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities" and ICC/ANSI A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- C. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.
- D. Zamac: ASTM B 86, commercial zinc-alloy die castings.

2.2 SOLID-POLYMER UNITS

- A. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Overhead braced.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Toilet compartments are based and detailed as manufactured by Scranton Products; 801 E. Corey Street Scranton, PA 18505 800.445.5184 www.scrantonproducts.com:
 - a. Hiny Hiders.
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide the basis of design product or a comparable product manufactured but not limited to the following:
 - a. [Ampco, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Comtec Industries/Capitol Partitions.](#)
 - c. [Metpar Corp.](#)
- B. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.
- C. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch thick, seamless, with eased edges, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.
1. Integral Hinges: Configure doors and pilasters to receive integral hinges.
 2. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum or stainless-steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-polymer components to prevent burning.

3. Color and Pattern: One color and texture/pattern in each room as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Full range shall include metallic, bold, and blended colors as well as all available surface textures.

D. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.

E. Brackets (Fittings):

1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; extruded aluminum.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard design, heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.

1. Material: Stainless steel.
2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees.
3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.

B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.

C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel or chrome-plated steel or brass, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.

B. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch-wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch-wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch-wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.

1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
 - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.

B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.

C. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113

SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Corner guards.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for metal protective trim units, according to BHMA A156.6, used for armor, kick, mop, and push plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- 2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.

- 1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.

- 1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Corner-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of cover installed, but no fewer than two, 48-inch-long units.
2. Mounting and Accessory Components: Amounts proportional to the quantities of extra materials. Package mounting and accessory components with each extra material.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
 1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.
 2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
 3. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F.
 - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities.

2.3 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard, PVC-free assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
 - 1. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.078-inch wall thickness; as follows:
 - a. Profile: Nominal 2-inch-long leg and 1/4-inch corner radius.
 - b. Height: 4 feet unless noted otherwise.
 - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
 - 3. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
 - 4. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- C. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- C. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. Mounting Heights: Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings and as required by the authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
 - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
 - 2. Adjust caps as required to ensure tight seams.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 102600

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
 - 2. Underlavatory guards.
 - 3. Custodial accessories.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
 - 3. Include electrical characteristics.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OWNERS STANDARDS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for toilet, bath, and laundry accessories is based on the owner's standard products with inventoried replacement parts.
- B. Provide the basis of design product listed except, subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products similar to items listed as manufactured by Bobrick that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
 - 2. American Specialties, Inc.
 - 3. Bradley Corporation.
 - 4. Gamco.

2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-2888.
- 2. Description: Surface mounted multi-roll toilet tissue dispenser. Door shall be secured to cabinet with two rivets and equipped with a tumbler lock. Unit shall dispense two standard-core toilet tissue rolls up to 5-1/4" diameter. Extra roll shall automatically drop into place when bottom rolls is depleted. ADA compliant.
- 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
- 4. Operation: Extra roll automatically drops into place when bottom roll is depleted. Depleted rolls can only be removed after unlocking door.
- 5. Capacity: Designed for two standard-core toilet tissue rolls up to 5-1/4" diameter.
- 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, Type-304, 22 gauge.

A. Liquid-Soap Dispenser:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick 818615 Contura Series, heavy-duty.
- 2. Description: Designed for dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
- 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
- 4. Capacity: 40 fluid ounces.
- 5. Material: Stainless steel, Type-316, 22 gauge.

B. Sanitary Napkin Disposal – Surface Mounted.

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-254.
- 2. Description: Surface mounted sanitary napkin disposal. Unit is equipped with a self-closing panel covering the disposal opening. Napkin disposal is emptied by opening door with furnished key and removing paper liners from removable waste receptacle.
- 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
- 4. Material: Stainless steel, Type-304, 22 gauge.

C. Grab Bar:

- 1. Mounting: Exposed with manufacturer's standard flanges and anchors.
- 2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick. Flange heliarc welded to bar. Uniform bar diameter around curves.

- a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4, satin finish.
 3. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches for heavy duty applications.
 4. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Mirror Unit:
1. Frame: Stainless-steel channel, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
 2. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
 - a. One piece, galvanized steel, wall hanger device with spring action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
 3. Size: As indicated on Drawings.
- E. Paper Towel (Roll) Dispenser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Kimberly-Clark Professional Electronic Hard Roll Towel Dispenser, Product Code #48857.
 2. Description: Touchless, hands-free operation universal roll towel dispenser. Battery powered. Translucent cover for easy identification of low paper supply. ADA compliant.
 3. Material: Black plastic.
 4. Mounting: Surface mounted.

2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Underlavatory Guard:
1. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevent direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
 2. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Mop and Broom Holder: Provide at each Janitor sink.
1. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
 2. Length: 36 inches.
 3. Hooks: Three.
 4. Mop/Broom Holders: Four, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
 - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
 - b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch-diameter stainless steel.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Rated or Nonrated. See floor plan and wall types.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
 - 1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
 - 2. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch backbend depth.
- E. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim.
- F. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless-steel sheet.
- G. Door Material: Stainless-steel sheet.
- H. Door Style: Solid opaque panel with frame.
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide recessed door pull and friction latch.
 - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- J. Accessories:
 - 1. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
 - 2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Etched.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Red.
 - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
- K. Materials:
 - 1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
 - a. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.

- b. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
 - a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
 2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
 3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. **Unless otherwise indicated, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for semirecessed cabinets, provide surface mounted fire-protection cabinets.**
 - 2. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Fire extinguishers are based and detailed as manufactured by JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group; 4450 West 78th Circle, Bloomington, MN 55435-5416 800.554.6077 www.activarcpg.com:
 - a. Cosmic 10E.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide the basis of design product or a comparable product manufactured but not limited to the following:
 - a. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - b. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division; Subsidiary of Kidde plc.
 - c. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
 - B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C or UL-rated 4-A:80-B:C, 10-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb inside fire protection cabinets.

END OF SECTION 104416

SECTION 105300 - MANUFACTURED HANGER ROD CANOPIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes furnishing and installation of pre-engineered, pre-finished extruded aluminum overhead hanger rod style canopies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's product information, specifications, and installation instructions for components and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: Provide design calculations, reactions, and detailed drawings signed and sealed by an engineer licensed within the state where canopy is being installed.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum five years of experience in design, fabrication, and production of aluminum canopies.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Firm with not less than five years of experience in design, fabrication, and production of aluminum canopies.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store all canopy components such that they are protected from damage.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. **Manufacturer's Special Warranty:** Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum canopies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Warranty shall include, but not be limited to coverage for structural, water tightness, and finish.
 - 1. **Warranty Period:** Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Hanger Rod Canopy is based on the following product manufactured by Mapes Canopies, Lincoln Nebraska, 1-888-273-1132. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.
 - 1. Super Lumideck HR Hanger Rod.
- B. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Mitchell Metals.
 - 2. Perfection Architectural Systems, LLC
 - 3. Tennessee Valley Metals, Inc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. **Delegated Design:** Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger rod canopy.
- B. **Structural Performance:** Shelters shall withstand the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7:
 - 1. **Design Loads:** In accordance with KBC.
- C. **Thermal Movements:** Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. **Temperature Change:** 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Decking shall consist of 3" extruded flat soffit .078 decking.
- B. Intermediate framing members shall be extruded aluminum, alloy 6063-T6, in manufacturer's standard profile and thickness required by structural design.
- C. Hanger rods and attachment hardware shall be a standard finish.
- D. Fascia shall be standard extruded 8" J style unless structural requirements or conditions require deeper assembly.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Ship precut materials sized for field assembly.
- B. All connections shall be mechanically assembled utilizing 3/16 fasteners with a minimum shear stress of 350 lb. Pre-welded or factory-welded connections are not acceptable.
- C. Concealed drainage. Water shall drain from covered surfaces into intermediate trough and be directed to downspout from rear gutter.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer (Kynar) finish, AAMA 605.2. Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Confirm that surrounding area is ready for the canopy installation
- B. Installer shall confirm dimensions and elevations to be as shown on shop drawings.
- C. Erection shall be performed by an approved installer and scheduled after all concrete, masonry and roofing in the area is completed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer's shop drawings. Particular attention shall be given to protecting the finish during handling and erection.
- B. Erection shall be performed by an approved installer.
- C. The entire structure shall be installed straight, true, and plumb according to standard construction procedures. Provide the minimal slope to allow water flow from top of canopy to draining columns and eliminate ponding.
- D. All joints, corners, and connection shall be tight and clean.
- E. Exposed fasteners shall be prefinished or painted to match canopy color.
- F. Decking is to be aligned and secured to aluminum frame structure.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Remove all protective coverings after installation.
- B. Entire system shall be left in a clean condition.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. After completing installation, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged portions.

END OF SECTION 105300

SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Manually operated roller shades with single rollers.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 1. Roller Shades: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of quantity installed for each size, color, and shadeband material indicated, but no fewer than two units.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

- 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES WITH SINGLE ROLLERS

- A. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
 - 1. Bead Chains: Stainless steel.
 - a. Loop Length: 3/4 length of roller shade.
 - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
 - 2. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: Manufacturer's standard for balancing roller shade weight and for lifting heavy roller shades.
 - a. Provide for shadebands that weigh more than 10 lb or for shades as recommended by manufacturer, whichever criterion is more stringent.
- B. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
 - 1. Roller Drive-End Location: Right or Left side of inside face of shade aligned with classroom door side.
 - 2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
 - 3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- C. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.

- D. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers into a multiband shade that is operated by one roller drive-end assembly.
- E. Shadebands at exterior windows:
 - 1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
 - 2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
 - a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.
 - 1. Type: Woven PVC-coated fiberglass.
 - 2. Weave: Fancy weave, rib weave, or basketweave.
 - 3. Thickness: .016 inch. min.
 - 4. Weight: 10.7 oz/sqyd min.
 - 5. Roll Width: 98 inches min.
 - 6. Orientation on Shadeband: Up the bolt.
 - 7. Openness Factor: 5 percent.
 - 8. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 - 1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch per side or 1/2-inch total, plus or minus 1/8 inch. Length equal to head-to-sill or -floor dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch, plus or minus 1/8 inch.
- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to the greatest extent possible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Solar Shadebands: Located so shadeband is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of exterior facing glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
 - 2. Install roller-shades to cover entire window.
- B. Roller Shade Locations: Provide light-filtering shades at all exterior windows.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces, after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 123661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid surface material countertops.
 - 2. Solid surface material backsplashes.
 - 3. Solid surface material end splashes.
 - 4. Solid surface material window stools.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 22 Section(s) for non-integral sinks and plumbing fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
 - 1. Show locations and details of joints.
 - 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA SS-1.
 - 1. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
 - 2. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 Exterior Glue, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 - 1. Grade: Custom.
- B. Configuration:
 - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top, built-up to 1-1/2".
 - a. Where indicated with apron, provide separate ADA compliant apron, 5 inches high (unless noted otherwise), recessed 1/4-inch behind front edge.
 - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
 - 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- C. Countertops: 1/2-inch-thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch-thick, solid surface material.
- E. Window stools: 1/2-inch-thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- F. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- G. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.

H. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

2.3 WINDOW STOOL FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate window stools according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."

1. Grade: Custom.

B. Configuration:

1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top, built-up to 1 inch unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Window stools: 1/2-inch-thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.

- D. Fabricate stools with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

- E. Joints: Fabricate without joints.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.

- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.

- B. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.

- C. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.

- D. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- E. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
 - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- F. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661.16

SECTION 142123.16 - MACHINE ROOM-LESS ELECTRIC TRACTION PASSENGER ELEVATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Machine-room-less electric traction elevators.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary use of elevators for construction purposes.
2. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for setting sleeves, inserts, and anchoring devices in masonry and for grouting elevator entrance frames installed in masonry walls.
3. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for the following:
 - a. Attachment plates and angle brackets for supporting guide-rail brackets.
 - b. Hoist beams.
 - c. Pit ladders.
4. Section 096519 "Resilient Tile Flooring" for finish flooring in elevator cars.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 apply to work of this Section.
- B. Service Elevator: A passenger elevator that is also used to carry freight.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Machine-room-less electric traction elevators.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Include capacities, sizes, performances, operations, safety features, finishes, and similar information.
2. Include Product Data for car enclosures, hoistway entrances, and operation, control, and signal systems.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and large-scale details indicating service at each landing, coordination with building structure, relationships with other construction, and locations of equipment.
2. Indicate maximum dynamic and static loads imposed on building structure at points of support, and maximum and average power demands.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by elevator manufacturer certifying that hoistway and pit layout and dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, and electrical service, as shown and specified, are adequate for elevator system being provided.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For elevators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's or Installer's standard operation and maintenance manual, in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 including diagnostic and repair information available to manufacturer's and Installer's maintenance personnel.
- B. Inspection and Acceptance Certificates and Operating Permits: As required by authorities having jurisdiction for normal, unrestricted elevator use.
- C. Continuing Maintenance Proposal:
 - 1. Submit a continuing maintenance proposal from Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard one-year maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Elevator manufacturer or an authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle materials, components, and equipment in manufacturer's protective packaging. Store materials, components, and equipment off of ground, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of inserts, sleeves, block outs, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and other items that are embedded in concrete or masonry for elevator equipment. Furnish templates, inserts, sleeves, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and installation instructions and deliver to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate locations and dimensions of work specified in other Sections that relates to electric traction elevators including pit ladders; sumps and floor drains in pits; entrance subsills; electrical service; and electrical outlets, lights, and switches in hoistways and pits.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair, restore, or replace elevator work that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, operation or control system failure, including excessive malfunctions; performances below specified ratings; excessive wear; unusual deterioration or aging of materials or finishes; unsafe conditions; need for excessive maintenance; abnormal noise or vibration; and similar unusual, unexpected, and unsatisfactory conditions.
 2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with requirements for accessible elevators in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC A117.1.

2.2 ELEVATORS

- A. Elevator System, General: Manufacturer's standard elevator systems. Unless otherwise indicated, manufacturer's standard components shall be used, as included in standard elevator systems and as required for complete system.
- B. Elevator Description:
1. Rated Load: 2100 lb.
 2. Freight Loading Class for Service Elevator(s): Class A.
 3. Rated Speed: 100 fpm.
 4. Operation System: Selective-collective automatic operation.
 5. Auxiliary Operations:
 - a. Battery-powered automatic evacuation.
 - b. Automatic operation of lights and ventilation fans.
 - c. Independent service.
 6. Security Features: Card-reader operation.
 7. Car Enclosures:
 - a. Inside Width: Not less than 69 inches from side wall to side wall.
 - b. Inside Depth: Not less than 52 inches from back wall to front wall (return panels).
 - c. Inside Height: Not less than 93 inches to underside of ceiling.
 - d. Front Walls (Return Panels): Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - e. Car Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - f. Side and Rear Wall Panels: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - g. Door Faces (Interior): Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - h. Door Sills: Aluminum.
 - i. Ceiling: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - j. Handrails: 1-1/2 inches round satin stainless steel, at sides and rear of car.
 - k. Floor prepared to receive resilient flooring (specified in Section 096519 "Resilient Tile Flooring").

8. Hoistway Entrances:
 - a. Width: 36 inches.
 - b. Height: 84 inches.
 - c. Type: Single-speed side sliding or Two-speed side sliding.
 - d. Frames: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - e. Doors and Transoms: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - f. Sills: Aluminum.
9. Hall Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
10. Additional Requirements:
 - a. Provide inspection certificate in each car, mounted under acrylic cover with frame made from satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - b. Provide hooks for protective pads and one complete set(s) of full-height protective pads.

2.3 MACHINE ROOM-LESS ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Schindler Elevator Corp 3100 Gearless Machine Room Less Traction Elevator; other manufacturers making products that may be incorporated into the project include the following:
 1. Fujitec America, Inc.
 2. KONE Inc.
 3. Mitsubishi Electric US, Inc.
 4. Otis Worldwide Corporation.
 5. ThyssenKrupp Elevator.

2.4 TRACTION SYSTEMS

- A. Elevator Machines: Permanent magnet, variable-voltage, variable-frequency, ac-type hoisting machines and solid-state power converters.
- B. Inserts: Furnish required concrete and masonry inserts and similar anchorage devices for installing guide rails, machinery, and other components of elevator work. Device installation is specified in another Section.
- C. Car Frame and Platform: Bolted- or welded-steel units.
- D. Guides: Roller guides or polymer-coated, nonlubricated sliding guides. Provide guides at top and bottom of car and counterweight frames.

2.5 OPERATION SYSTEMS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard microprocessor operation systems as required to provide type of operation indicated.
- B. Auxiliary Operations:
 1. Single-Car Battery-Powered Automatic Evacuation: If power fails and car is at a floor, it remains at that floor, opens its doors, and shuts down. If car is between floors, it moves to the next floor above or below, opens its doors, and shuts down. System includes rechargeable battery and automatic recharging system.

2. Automatic Dispatching of Loaded Car: When car load exceeds 80 percent of rated capacity, doors begin closing.
3. Automatic Operation of Lights and Fan: When elevator is stopped and unoccupied with doors closed, lighting, ventilation fan, and cab displays are de-energized after five minutes and are re-energized before car doors open.
4. Independent Service: Keyswitch in car-control station removes car from group operation and allows it to respond only to car calls. Key cannot be removed from keyswitch when car is in independent service. When in independent service, doors close only in response to door close button.

C. Security features may not affect emergency firefighters' service.

1. Card-Reader Operation: System uses card readers at car-control stations to authorize calls. Security system determines which landings and at what times calls require authorization by card reader. Provide required conductors in traveling cable and panel in machine room for interconnecting card readers, other security access system equipment, and elevator controllers. Allow space for card reader in car.
 - a. Security access system equipment is specified in Section 281500 "Access Control Hardware Devices."
2. Car-to-Lobby Feature: Feature, activated by keyswitch at main lobby, that causes car to return immediately to lobby and open doors for inspection. On deactivation by keyswitch, calls registered before keyswitch activation are completed and normal operation is resumed.

2.6 DOOR REOPENING DEVICES

- A. Infrared Array: Provide door reopening device with uniform array of 36 or more microprocessor-controlled, infrared light beams projecting across car entrance. Interruption of one or more light beams causes doors to stop and reopen.

2.7 CAR ENCLOSURES

- A. Materials and Finishes: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:

1. Subfloor:
 - a. Exterior, underlayment grade plywood, not less than 5/8-inch nominal thickness.
2. Floor Finish:
 - a. Specified in Section 096519 "Resilient Tile Flooring".
3. Stainless Steel Wall Panels: Flush, formed-metal construction; fabricated from stainless steel sheet.
4. Fabricate car with recesses and cutouts for signal equipment.
5. Fabricate car door frame integrally with front wall of car.
6. Stainless Steel Doors: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless steel sheet or by laminating stainless steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled or powder-coated steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.
7. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on car doors.
8. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch thick.
9. Ceiling: Metal flush panels, with four low-voltage downlights in each panel.

2.8 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Manufacturer's standard horizontal-sliding, door-and-frame hoistway entrances complete with track systems, hardware, sills, and accessories. Frame size and profile to accommodate hoistway wall construction.
- B. Fire-Rated Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Door and frame assemblies to comply with NFPA 80 and be listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction based on testing at as close-to-neutral pressure as possible in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B.
 - 1. Fire-Protection Rating: 1 hour unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
- C. Materials and Fabrication: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Stainless Steel Frames: Formed from stainless steel sheet.
 - 2. Star of Life Symbol: Identify emergency elevators with star of life symbol, not less than 3 inches high, on both jambs of hoistway door frames.
 - 3. Stainless Steel Doors and Transoms: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless steel sheet or by laminating stainless steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled or powder-coated steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.
 - 4. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on doors matching door edges.
 - 5. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch thick.
 - 6. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M.

2.9 SIGNAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide hall-call and car-call buttons that light when activated and remain lit until call has been fulfilled. Provide vandal-resistant buttons and lighted elements illuminated with LEDs.
- B. Car-Control Stations: Provide manufacturer's standard recessed or semirecessed car-control stations. Mount in return panel adjacent to car door unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mark buttons and switches for required use or function. Use both tactile symbols and Braille.
 - 2. Provide "No Smoking" sign matching car-control station, either integral with car-control station or mounted adjacent to it, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Emergency Communication System: Two-way voice communication system, with visible signal, which dials preprogrammed number of monitoring station and does not require handset use. System is contained in flush-mounted cabinet, with identification, instructions for use, and battery backup power supply.
- D. Hall Push-Button Stations: Provide one hall push-button station at each landing.
 - 1. Provide units with flat faceplate for mounting with body of unit recessed in wall.
 - 2. Equip units with buttons for calling elevator and for indicating desired direction of travel.
- E. Hall Lanterns: Units with illuminated arrows; but provide single arrow at terminal landings. Provide the following:

1. Manufacturer's standard wall-mounted units, for mounting above entrance frames.
 2. Units with flat faceplate for mounting with body of unit recessed in wall and with illuminated elements projecting from faceplate for ease of angular viewing.
- F. Hall Annunciator: With each hall lantern, provide audible signals indicating car arrival and direction of travel. Signals sound once for up and twice for down.
1. At manufacturer's option, audible signals may be placed on cars.
- G. Standby Power Elevator Selector Switches: Provide switches, as required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44, where indicated. Adjacent to switches, provide illuminated signal that indicates when normal power supply has failed.
- H. Emergency Pictorial Signs: Fabricate from materials matching hall push-button stations, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that in case of fire, elevators are out of service and exits should be used instead. Provide one sign at each hall push-button station unless otherwise indicated.

2.10 FINISH MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, commercial steel, Type B, exposed, matte finish.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel, Type B, pickled.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304.
- D. Stainless Steel Bars: ASTM A276/A276M, Type 304.
- E. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A554, Grade MT 304.
- F. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elevator areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Examine hoistways, hoistway openings, and pits as constructed; verify critical dimensions; and examine supporting structure and other conditions under which elevator work is to be installed.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF MACHINE ROOM-LESS ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Welded Construction: Provide welded connections for installing elevator work where bolted connections are not required for subsequent removal or for normal operation, adjustment,

inspection, maintenance, and replacement of worn parts. Comply with AWS standards for workmanship and for qualifications of welding operators.

- C. Sound Isolation: Mount rotating and vibrating equipment on vibration-isolating mounts to minimize vibration transmission to structure and structure-borne noise due to elevator system.
- D. Lubricate operating parts of systems, including ropes, as recommended by manufacturers.
- E. Alignment: Coordinate installation of hoistway entrances with installation of elevator guide rails for accurate alignment of entrances with car. Where possible, delay final adjustment of sills and doors until car is operable in shaft. Reduce clearances to minimum, safe, workable dimension at each landing.
- F. Leveling Tolerance: 1/8 inch, up or down, regardless of load and travel direction.
- G. Set sills flush with finished floor surface at landing. Fill space under sill solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- H. Locate hall signal equipment for elevators as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Place hall lanterns either above or beside each hoistway entrance.
 - 2. Mount hall lanterns at a minimum of 72 inches above finished floor.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing: On completion of elevator installation and before permitting elevator use (either temporary or permanent), perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and by governing regulations and agencies.
- B. Advise Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction in advance of dates and times that tests are to be performed on elevators.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate, adjust, and maintain elevator(s).
- B. Check operation of elevator with Owner's personnel present before date of Substantial Completion and again not more than one month before end of warranty period. Determine that operation systems and devices are functioning properly.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service to include twelve months' full maintenance by skilled employees of elevator Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper elevator operation at rated speed and capacity. Parts and supplies to be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 1. Perform maintenance during normal working hours.
 - 2. Perform emergency callback service during normal working hours with response time of two hours or less.

END OF SECTION 142123.16

SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
- 2. Removing existing vegetation.
- 3. Clearing and grubbing.
- 4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
- 5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
- 6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Subsoil: Soil beneath the level of subgrade; soil beneath the topsoil layers of a naturally occurring soil profile, typified by less than 1 percent organic matter and few soil organisms.
- B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile. In undisturbed areas, surface soil is typically called "topsoil," but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil; the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
- D. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- E. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction.
- F. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
- C. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises.
- D. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.
- F. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the soil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Verify that trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated have been flagged and that protection zones have been identified and enclosed.

- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

- A. Protect trees and plants remaining on-site.
- B. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations.

3.3 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
- B. Removal of underground utilities is included in earthwork sections; in applicable fire suppression, plumbing, HVAC, electrical, communications, electronic safety and security, and utilities sections; and in Section 024116 "Structure Demolition."

3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
 - 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
 - 2. Grind down stumps and remove roots larger than 3 inches in diameter, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
 - 3. Use only hand methods or air spade for grubbing within protection zones.
 - 4. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.5 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil to depth of 6 inches in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
 - 1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil or other materials. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.

1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
3. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

3.6 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

3.7 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Burning tree, shrub, and other vegetation waste on site is prohibited.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
2. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, turf and grasses, and plants.
3. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
4. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
5. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
6. Subbase course for asphalt paving.
7. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
2. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
3. Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading in turf and grass areas, including preparing and placing planting soil for turf areas.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.

1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

- B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

- C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

- E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.

1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices and changes in the Work.
2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material 3/4 cu. yd. or more in volume that exceed a standard penetration resistance of 100 blows/2 inches when tested by a geotechnical testing agency, according to ASTM D 1586.

I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

J. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.

K. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

L. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct preexcavation conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to earthmoving, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Coordination of Work with utility locator service.
 - c. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of tree- and plant-protection zones.
 - d. Extent of trenching by hand or with air spade.
 - e. Field quality control.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:

1. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth-moving operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- C. Do not commence earth-moving operations until temporary site fencing and erosion- and sedimentation-control measures specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" and Section 311000 "Site Clearing" are in place.
- D. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 3. Foot traffic.
 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
 5. Impoundment of water.
 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- F. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.
1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 294/D 2940M 0; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- J. Sand: ASTM C 33/C 33M; fine aggregate.
- K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:
 - 1. As-Cast Unit Weight: 36 to 42 lb/cu. ft. at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C 138/C 138M.
 - 2. Compressive Strength: 30 to 100 psi when tested according to ASTM C 495/C 495M.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
 - 1. Red: Electric.
 - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 - 4. Blue: Water systems.
 - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
 - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
 - 2. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.
- B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
 1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 3. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 4. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
- D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
 1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.

3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Architect and Geotechnical Engineer when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Geotechnical Engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices and changes in the Work.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
 - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by the Geotechnical Engineer or Architect.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch-thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.
- F. Initial Backfill:
 - 1. Utility trenches in paved areas require Controlled Low-Strength Material backfill.
 - 2. Soil Backfill: Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material or satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.
 - a. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
 - 3. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- G. Final Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
- H. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.13 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
 - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
 - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.14 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
 - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.15 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
 - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 98 percent per ASTM D698 or 85 percent relative density per ASTM D4253/D4254.
 - 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent per ASTM D 698 or 75 percent relative density per ASTM D4253/D4254.
 - 3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
 - 4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent per ASTM D 698 or 75 percent relative density per ASTM D4253/D4254
 - 5. Immediately prior to paving, scarify the top 8 inches of clayey subgrade and recompact within 2 percent of optimum moisture content and to at least 100 percent of the maximum dry unit weight as per ASTM D698.
 - 6. Immediately prior to slab on grade floor construction scarify the top 8 inches of clayey subgrade and recompact within 2 percent of optimum moisture content and to at least 95 percent of the maximum dry unit weight as per ASTM D698.

3.16 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:
 - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.

2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.17 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Section 334600 "Subdrainage."
- B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
- C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 1. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch-thick compacted layers to final subgrade.

3.18 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

- A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
 1. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 2. Shape subbase course and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
 3. Place subbase course and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 4. Place subbase course and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 5. Compact subbase course and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698, or to not less than 85 percent relative density as per ASTM D4253/D4254 if the material does not exhibit a well-defined moisture density curve per ASTM D698.
- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.19 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 - 1. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 2. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 - 3. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698, or to not less than 85 percent relative density as per ASTM D4253/D4254 if the material does not exhibit a well-defined moisture density curve per ASTM D698.

3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Determine that fill material classification and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
 - 3. Determine, during placement and compaction, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2937, and ASTM D 6938, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab but in no case fewer than three tests.
 - 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length but no fewer than two tests.
 - 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length but no fewer than two tests.
- F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.21 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
 - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.22 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
- 2. Asphalt surface treatments.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, fill material, unbound-aggregate subbase and base courses, and aggregate pavement shoulders.
- 2. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and for separate concrete curbs, gutters, and driveway aprons.
- 3. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at pavement terminations.

1.3 KENTUCKY DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION INDEX FOR PETROLEUM

- A. Work of this Section is affected by pricing uncertainty. Cost adjustments for asphalt pricing shall be on the Ohio Department of Transportation (ODOT) asphalt binder price adjustment calculator. A price adjustment shall be made for the percentage difference at the time of installation in excess of 5% over or 5% under the most currently published ODOT asphalt placing index. The successful Bidder shall be responsible for any increase or decrease in asphalt petroleum pricing up to 5%.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
 - b. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
- 2. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.

3. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the Kentucky Department of Transportation for asphalt paving work.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
 1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
 2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
 3. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
 4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692/D 692M, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- C. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
 1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.
- D. Mineral Filler: ASTM D 242/D 242M or AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO M 320, PG 64-22 or current published performance grade.
- B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381/D 3381M for viscosity-graded material and ASTM D 946/D 946M for penetration-graded material.
- C. Cutback Prime Coat: ASTM D 2027, medium-curing cutback asphalt, MC-30 or MC-70.

- D. Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- E. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- F. Water: Potable.
- G. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141/D 3141M; pumping consistency.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Sand: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, Grade No. 2 or No. 3.
- B. Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690 or AASHTO M 324, Type I Type II or III, hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant.

2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense-graded, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes; designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types"; and complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Provide protective materials, procedures, and worker training to prevent asphalt materials from spilling, coating, or building up on curbs, driveway aprons, manholes, and other surfaces adjacent to the Work.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
 - 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
 - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
 - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
 - 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that prepared subgrade has been proof-rolled and is ready to receive paving. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces.
- B. Cutback Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd.. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
 - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- C. Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.10 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd. per inch depth. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
 - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
 - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.5 PLACING HOT-MIX ASPHALT

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand in areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
 - 1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.

2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
 3. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
 4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Overlap mix placement about 1 to 1-1/2 inches from strip to strip to ensure proper compaction of mix along longitudinal joints.
 2. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.6 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
 2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
 3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
 4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."
 5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
 6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.7 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927 or AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent or greater than 100 percent.

2. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent or greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

3.9 SURFACE TREATMENTS

- A. Slurry Seals: Apply slurry coat in a uniform thickness in accordance with ASTM D3910 and allow to cure.
 1. Roll slurry seal to remove ridges and provide a uniform, smooth surface.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.

- D. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices: Finished height of traffic-calming devices above pavement will be measured for compliance with tolerances.
- E. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979 or AASHTO T 168.
 - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
 - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
 - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than three cores taken.
 - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- F. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- G. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes Concrete Paving including the following:
 - 1. Driveways/pads.
 - 2. Curbs and gutters.
 - 3. Walks.
 - 4. Surface Coloring Materials for colored concrete.
 - 5. Stamping materials.
 - 6. Water Repellent for exposed exterior concrete paving surfaces.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
 - 2. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in expansion and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.
 - 3. Section 321723 "Pavement Markings."
 - 4. Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing" for detectable warning mats or tiles.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
 - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
 - 4. Admixtures.
 - 5. Curing compounds.

6. Applied finish materials.
7. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
8. Joint fillers.

B. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:

1. Aggregates: Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").

B. Mockups: Build mockups colored/textured concrete to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockups of full-thickness sections of concrete paving to demonstrate typical joints; surface finish, texture, and color; curing; and standard of workmanship.
2. Build mockups of concrete paving in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, build mockups where directed by Architect and not less than 36" x 36".
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

B. Cold-Weather Concrete Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:

1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.

C. Hot-Weather Concrete Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap, so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

1.8 WATER REPELLENT CONDITIONS AND WARRANTY

- A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:
 1. Concrete surfaces have cured for not less than 28 days.
 2. Not less than 24 hours have passed since surfaces were last wet.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
 1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- C. Tie Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- D. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against paving form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.

- E. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded-wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
 - 1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
 - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, gray portland cement Type I/II.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or Class F.
 - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 4S, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- E. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry or cotton mats.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

- F. White, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B, dissipating.

2.6 SURFACE COLORING MATERIALS

- A. Pigmented Powder Release Agent: Factory-packaged, dry combination of surface-conditioning and dispersing agents interground with color pigments that facilitates release of stamp mats. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company; INCRETE COLOR RELEASE or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. QC Construction Products.
 - b. Scofield, L. M. Company.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 STAMPING DEVICES

- A. Stamp Mats: Semirigid polyurethane mats with projecting textured and ridged underside capable of imprinting texture and joint patterns in plastic concrete for use at colored concrete locations.
 - 1. Texture shall have a patterned appearance approximating slate tiles, similar or equal to 'Notched Olde English Ashlar' by Increte Systems.

2.8 WATER REPELLENTS

- A. General Performance: Water repellents shall meet performance requirements indicated without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation.
 - 1. Water Repellents: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies representing those indicated for this Project.
- B. Water Absorption: Minimum 80 percent reduction of water absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
 - 1. Cast-in Place Concrete: ASTM C 642.
- C. Chloride-Ion Intrusion in Concrete: NCHRP Report 244, Series II tests.
 - 1. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
 - 2. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.
- D. Penetrating Water Repellents for Concrete Horizontal Surfaces
 - 1. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blend with 400 g/L or less of VOCs for all exterior concrete surfaces.
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Water repellent for exterior concrete is based the following product manufactured by L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; 14851 Calhoun Road Omaha, NE 68152 404.453.6600 www.lmcc.com:

1) Aquapel Plus.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide the basis of design product or a comparable product manufactured but not limited to the following:
- a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC.
 - b. Pecora Corporation.
 - c. PROSOCO, Inc.

2.9 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber in preformed strips.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
 2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that comply with or exceed requirements.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent.
 3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Slag Cement: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
 1. Air Content: 5-1/2 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 2. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for nominal maximum aggregate size less than 1-1/2 inch.

- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- F. Concrete Mixtures: Normal-weight concrete.
 - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4500 psi.
 - 2. Maximum W/C Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
 - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

2.11 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
 - 3. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch according to requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.

- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded-wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap of adjacent mats.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
 - 3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent OR epoxy-bonding adhesive at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 - 5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
 - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 - 3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 - 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.

5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
 2. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 3/8-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement dowels and joint devices.

- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
- J. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 - 1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.8 SPECIAL FINISHES

- A. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Uniformly spread pigmented powder release agent onto concrete surface at a rate of 3 to 4 lb/100 sq. ft. unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match paving color required.
 - 2. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over the concrete surface with mechanical spreader; allow hardener to absorb moisture and embed it by power floating. Follow power floating with a second application of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed hardener by final power floating.
 - 3. After final power floating, uniformly load mats and press into concrete to produce required imprint pattern and depth of imprint on concrete surface. Gently remove stamp mats. Hand stamp edges and surfaces unable to be imprinted by mats.
 - 4. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNINGS

- A. Blockouts: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of detectable paving units specified in Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing."
 - 1. Tolerance for Opening Size: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of tiles specified in Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing." Screed surface of concrete where tiles are to be installed to elevation, so that edges of installed tiles will be flush with surrounding concrete paving. Embed tiles in fresh concrete to comply with Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing" immediately after screeding concrete surface.

3.10 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

3.11 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
 - 1. Elevation: 3/4 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-feet-long; unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch.
 - 4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches of tie bar.
 - 5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch.
 - 6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch.
 - 7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches of dowel.
 - 8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
 - 9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
 - 10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 - 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.13 APPLICATION OF WATER REPELLENT

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Inspect for previously applied treatments that may inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents.
 - 3. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.
 - 4. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.
- B. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Correct damage to work of other trades caused by water-repellent application, as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

3.14 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

SECTION 321373 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cold-applied joint sealants.
 - 2. Hot-applied joint sealants.
 - 3. Joint-sealant backer materials.
 - 4. Primers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing nontraffic and traffic joints in locations not specified in this Section.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

2.2 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM D 5893/D 5893M, Type NS.
- B. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM D 5893/D 5893M, Type SL.
- C. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Polysulfide: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use T.

2.3 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690, Type I, II, or III.

2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. Joint-Sealant Backer Materials: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- D. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

2.5 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Before installing joint sealants, clean out joints immediately to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions.
- C. Install joint-sealant backings to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install joint sealants immediately following backing installation, using proven techniques that comply with the following:
 - 1. Place joint sealants so they fully contact joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
 - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess joint sealant as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturers.
- B. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

3.5 PAVING-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints within cement concrete pavement.
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Expansion and isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete pavement.
 - b. Contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Single-component, nonsag, silicone joint sealant, Single-component, self-leveling, silicone joint sealant, or Single-component, self-leveling, polysulfide joint sealant.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Gray.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
 - b. Joints between concrete curbs and asphalt pavement.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Hot-applied, single-component joint sealant.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard.

END OF SECTION 321373

SECTION 321411 – MODULAR RETAINING WALL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Engineered concrete modular concrete block retaining wall units to the lines and grades designated on the construction drawings and as specified herein.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For materials other than water and aggregates.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: Required for reinforced modular concrete retaining walls where soil type, wall height, retained slope, and/or retained surcharge exceed manufacturer's limits for unreinforced gravity wall. Submittal shall include geogrid or other reinforcement, drainage, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for submittal preparation.
- C. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, one complete set of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store modular units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.
- B. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design gravity retaining wall system utilizing modular concrete units.
 - 1. ASTM C1372 Standard Specification for Segmental Retaining Wall Units.

2. ASTM C1262 Evaluating the Freeze thaw Durability of Manufactured CMU's and Related concrete Units
3. ASTM D698 Moisture Density Relationship for Soils, Standard Method
4. ASTM D422 Gradation of Soils
5. ASTM C140 Sample and Testing concrete Masonry Units

2.2 CONCRETE MODULAR WALL UNITS

- A. Modular Concrete: Wall units shall have minimum 28 day compressive strength of 3000 psi in accordance with ASTM C1372. The concrete units shall have adequate freeze-thaw protection with an average absorption rate in accordance with ASTM C1372 or an average absorption rate of 7.5 lb/ft³.
1. Wall units shall provide a minimum of 110 lbs total weight per square foot of wall face area. Fill contained within the units may be considered 80% effective weight
 2. Face Size and Shape: nominal 8 inches H x 12 inches D x 18 inches L. rectangular.
 - a. Accessories: Cap and corner units.
 3. Exterior face shall be smooth.
 4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 WALL ROCK

- A. Material must be well-graded compactable aggregate, 0.25 in. to 1.5 in., with no more than 10% passing the #200 sieve. (ASTM D422)
- B. Material behind and within the blocks may be the same material

2.4 INFILL SOIL

- A. Infill material shall be site excavated soils when approved by the on-site soils engineer unless otherwise specified in the drawings. Unsuitable soils for backfill (heavy clays or organic soils) shall not be used in the reinforced soil mass. Fine grained cohesive soils ($\phi < 31$) may be used in wall construction, but additional backfilling, compaction and water management efforts are required. Poorly graded sands, expansive clays and/or soils with a plasticity index (PI) >20 or a liquid limit (LL) >40 should not be used in wall construction.
- B. The infill soil used must meet or exceed the designed friction angle and description noted on the design cross sections, and must be free of debris and consist of one of the following inorganic USCS soil types: GP, GW, SW, SP meeting the following gradation as determined in accordance with ASTM D422.

C.

<u>Sieve Size</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>
4 inch (100 mm)	100 – 75
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100 – 20
No. 40 (0.425 mm)	0 - 60
No. 200 (0.075 mm)	0 - 35

- D. Where additional fill is required, contractor shall submit sample and specifications to the wall design engineer or the onsite soils engineer for approval and the approving engineer must certify that the soils proposed for use has properties meeting or exceeding original design standards.

2.5 GEOGRID REINFORCEMENT

A. Reference standards:

1. ASTM D4595 - Tensile Properties of Geotextiles by the Wide-Width Strip Method
2. ASTM D5262 - Test Method for Evaluating the Unconfined Creep Behavior of Geogrids
3. ASTM D6638 Grid Connection Strength (SRW-U1)
4. ASTM D6916 SRW Block Shear Strength (SRW-U2)
5. GRI-GG4 - Grid Long Term Allowable Design Strength (LTADS)
6. ASTM D6706 - Grid Pullout of Soil

- B. Geogrid products shall be of high density polyethylene or polyester yarns encapsulated in a protective coating specifically fabricated for use as a soil reinforcement material

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine location of retaining walls with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EXCAVATION

- A. Contractor shall excavate to the lines and grades shown on the construction drawings. Contractor shall use caution not to over-excavate beyond the lines shown, or to disturb the base elevations beyond those shown

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Foundation Soil Preparation.

1. Foundation soil shall be excavated to the lines and grades as shown on the construction drawings, or as directed by the on-site soils engineer.
2. Foundation soil shall be examined by the on-site soils engineer to assure that the actual foundation soil strength meets or exceeds assumed design strength.
3. Over-excavated areas shall be filled with compacted backfill material approved by on-site soils engineer.

B. Wall Construction.

1. Base.

- a. The base material shall be the same as the Wall Rock material or a low permeable granular material.
- b. Base material shall be located to allow bottom wall units to be buried to proper depths as per wall heights and specifications.
- c. Base material shall be installed on undisturbed native soils or suitable replacement fills compacted to a minimum of 95% Standard Proctor (ASTM D698).
- d. Base shall be compacted at 95% Standard Proctor (ASTM D698) to provide a level hard surface on which to place the first course of blocks. The base shall be constructed to ensure proper wall embedment and the final elevation shown on the

plans. Well-graded sand can be used to smooth the top 1/2 in. on the base material.

- e. Base material shall be a 4 in. minimum depth for walls under 4 ft and a 6 in. minimum depth for walls over 4 ft.

2. Unit Installation.

- a. The first course of wall units shall be placed on the prepared base with the raised lip facing up and out and the front edges tight together. The units shall be checked for level and alignment as they are placed.
- b. Ensure that units are in full contact with base. Proper care shall be taken to develop straight lines and smooth curves on base course as per wall layout.
- c. Fill all cores and cavities and a minimum of 12 in. behind the base course with wall rock. Use infill soils behind the wall rock and approved soils in front of the base course to firmly lock in place. Check again for level and alignment. Use a plate compactor to consolidate the area behind the base course. All excess material shall be swept from top of units.
- d. Install next course of wall units on top of base course. Position blocks to be offset from seams of blocks below. Perfect "running bond" is not essential, but a 3 in. minimum offset is recommended. Check each block for proper alignment and level. Fill all cavities in and around wall units and to a minimum of 12 in. depth behind block with wall rock. For taller wall application the depth of wall rock behind the block should be increased; walls from 15 ft to 25 ft should have a minimum of 2 ft and walls above 25ft should have a minimum of 3 ft. Spread infill soil in uniform lifts not exceeding 8 in. in uncompacted thickness and compact to 95% of Standard Proctor (ASTM D698) behind the consolidation zone.
- e. The consolidation zone shall be defined as 3 ft behind the wall. Compaction within the consolidation zone shall be accomplished by using a hand operated plate compactor and shall begin by running the plate compactor directly on the block and then compacting in parallel paths from the wall face until the entire consolidation zone has been compacted. A minimum of two passes of the plate compactor are required with maximum lifts of 8 in. Expansive or fine-grained soils may require additional compaction passes and/or specific compaction equipment such as a sheepsfoot roller. Maximum lifts of 4 inches may be required to achieve adequate compaction within the consolidation zone. Employ methods using lightweight compaction equipment that will not disrupt the stability or batter of the wall. Final compaction requirements in the consolidation zone shall be established by the engineer of record.
- f. Install each subsequent course in like manner. Repeat procedure to the extent of wall height.
- g. Install cap units in accordance with Design and manufacturer's instructions.
- h. Tolerances.
 - 1) **Vertical Control** - ± 1.25 in. max. over 10 ft distance
 - 2) **Horizontal Location Control** - straight lines ± 1.25 in. over a 10 ft distance.
 - 3) **Rotation** - from established plan wall batter: 2.0°
 - 4) **Bulging** - 1.0 in. over a 10 ft distance

C. Geogrid Installation.

- 1. Install modular wall units to designated height of first geogrid layer. Backfill and compact the wall rock and infill soil in layers not to exceed 8 in. lifts behind wall to depth equal to designed grid length before grid is installed.

2. Cut geogrid to designed embedment length and place on top of Allan Block to back edge of lip. Extend away from wall approximately 3% above horizontal on compacted infill soils.
3. Lay geogrid at the proper elevation and orientations shown on the construction drawings or as directed by the wall design engineer.
4. Correct orientation of the geogrid shall be verified by the contractor and on-site soils engineer. Strength direction is typically perpendicular to wall face.
5. Follow manufacturer's guidelines for overlap requirements. In curves and corners.
6. Place next course of modular units on top of grid and fill block cores with wall rock to lock in place. Remove slack and folds in grid and stake to hold in place.
7. Adjacent sheets of geogrid shall be butted against each other at the wall face to achieve 100 percent coverage.
8. Geogrid lengths shall be continuous. Splicing parallel to the wall face is not allowed

D. Fill Placement.

1. Infill soil shall be placed in lifts and compacted as specified under Unit Installation above.
2. Infill soil shall be placed, spread and compacted in such a manner that minimizes the development of slack or movement of the geogrid.
3. Only hand-operated compaction equipment shall be allowed within 3 ft behind the wall. This area shall be defined as the consolidation zone. Compaction in this zone shall begin by running the plate compactor directly on the block and then compacting in parallel paths to the wall face until the entire consolidation zone has been compacted. A minimum of two passes of the plate compactor are required with maximum lifts of 8 in.
4. When fill is placed and compaction cannot be defined in terms of Standard Proctor Density, then compaction shall be performed using ordinary compaction process and compacted so that no deformation is observed from the compaction equipment or to the satisfaction of the engineer of record or the site soils engineer.
5. Tracked construction equipment shall not be operated directly on the geogrid. A minimum fill thickness of 6 in. is required prior to operation of tracked vehicles over the geogrid. Turning of tracked vehicles should be kept to a minimum to prevent tracks from displacing the fill and damaging the geogrid.
6. Rubber-tired equipment may pass over the geogrid reinforcement at slow speeds, less than 10 mph. Sudden braking and sharp turning shall be avoided.
7. The infill soil shall be compacted to achieve 95% Standard Proctor (ASTM D698). Compaction tests shall be taken at 3 ft behind the block and at the back of the reinforced zone. The frequency shall be as determined by the on-site soils engineer or as specified on the plan. Soil tests of the infill soil shall be submitted to the on-site soils engineer for review and approval prior to the placement of any material. The contractor is responsible for achieving the specified compaction requirements. The on-site soils engineer may direct the contractor to remove, correct or amend any soil found not in compliance with these written specifications.

E. Drainage System.

1. Provide a minimum of 12 in. of wall rock directly behind the wall facing.
2. Install a drainage collection pipe, drain pipe, shall be a 4 in. perforated or slotted PVC, or corrugated HDPE pipe.
3. All walls will be constructed with a 4 in. diameter drain pipe placed at the lowest possible elevation within the 12 in. of wall rock.
 - a. A minimum one percent gradient be maintained on the placement of the pipe with outlets on 50 ft centers, or 100 ft centers if pipe is crowned between the outlets.

- b. For rigid drain pipes with drain holes the pipes should be positioned with the holes located down.
 - c. Drain pipes outlets shall be on 100 foot centers maximum.
4. Geogrid Reinforced Walls shall be constructed with an additional 4 in. drain pipe at the back bottom of the reinforced soil mass.
- a. The piping used at the back of the reinforced mass shall have a one percent minimum gradient over the length, but it is not critical for it to be positioned at the very bottom of the cut. Additionally the entire length of the pipe may be vented at one point and should not be tied into the toe drain.
 - b. The pipe may be a rigid pipe with holes at the bottom with an integral sock encasing the pipe or a corrugated perforated flexible pipe with a sock to filter out fines when required based on soil conditions. For infill soils with a high percentage of sand and/or gravel the heel drain pipe does not need to be surrounded by drainage rock. When working with soils containing more than fifty percent clay, one cubic foot of drainage rock is required for each foot of pipe.

3.4 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in same manner as original units, with same joint treatment and with no evidence of replacement.

END OF SECTION 321411

SECTION 321723 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes painted markings applied to asphalt and concrete pavement.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Ohio Department of Transportation for pavement-marking work.
 - 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for alkyd materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.
 - 1. Color: White for vehicular and traffic organization and direction as indicated and Red for fire lane, emergency vehicles, and as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Yellow where indicated on drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for a minimum of 30 days before starting pavement marking.

- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
 - 1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to pavement. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond the stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath the stencil.

3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 321723

SECTION 321726 - TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast-in-place replaceable detectable warning tiles.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete walkways serving as substrates for tactile warning surfacing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish requiring color selection.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For tactile warning surfacing, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.
- B. Weather Limitations for Adhesive Application:
 - 1. Apply adhesive only when ambient temperature is above 50 deg F and when temperature has not been below 35 deg F for 12 hours immediately before application. Do not apply when substrate is wet or contains excess moisture.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of tactile warning surfaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering and wear.
 - b. Separation or delamination of materials and components.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities for tactile warning surfaces.
 1. For tactile warning surfaces composed of multiple units, provide units that when installed provide consistent side-to-side and end-to-end dome spacing that complies with requirements.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of tactile warning surfacing, joint material, setting material, anchor, and fastener from single source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning tiles with replaceable surface configured for setting flush in new concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes and field of tile.
 1. Material: Molded glass- and carbon-fiber-reinforced polyester.
 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
 3. Shapes and Sizes:
 - a. Rectangular panel, 24 by width as required but a minimum of 48 inches.
 - b. Radius panel, nominal 24 inches deep by outside radius as required.
 4. Dome Spacing and Configuration: Manufacturer's standard compliant spacing, in manufacturer's standard pattern.
 5. Mounting:
 - a. Replaceable detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete and surface-fastened to permanently embedded anchors.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of tactile warning surfaces, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 1. Furnish Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use.
 2. Fastener Heads: For nonstructural connections, use flathead or oval countersunk screws and bolts with tamper-resistant heads, colored to match tile.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by manufacturer for adhering tactile warning surfacing unit to pavement.

- C. Sealant: As recommended by manufacturer for sealing perimeter of tactile warning surfacing unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that installation of tactile warning surfacing will comply with accessibility requirements upon completion.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

- A. General: Prepare substrate and install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place tactile warning surfacing units in dimensions and orientation indicated. Comply with location requirements of AASHTO MP 12.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Removable Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles:
 - 1. Concrete Paving Installation: Comply with installation requirements in Section 321313 "Concrete Paving." Mix, place, and finish concrete to conditions complying with detectable warning tile manufacturer's written requirements for satisfactory embedment of removable tile.
 - 2. Set each detectable warning tile accurately and firmly in place with embedding anchors and fasteners attached, and firmly seat tile back in wet concrete by tamping or vibrating. If necessary, temporarily apply weight to tiles to ensure full contact with concrete.
 - 3. Set surface of tile flush with surrounding concrete and adjacent tiles, with variations between tiles and between concrete and tiles not exceeding plus or minus 1/8 inch from flush.
 - 4. Protect exposed surfaces of installed tiles from contact with wet concrete. Complete finishing of concrete paving surrounding tiles. Remove concrete from tile surfaces.
 - 5. Clean tiles using methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Optional Surface-Applied Detectable Warning Tiles into formed recesses:
 - 1. Lay out detectable warning tiles as indicated and mark concrete pavement.
 - 2. Prepare existing paving surface by grinding and cleaning as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Apply adhesive to back of tiles in amounts and pattern recommended by manufacturer, and set tiles in place. Firmly seat tiles in adhesive bed, eliminating air pockets and establishing full adhesion to pavement. If necessary, temporarily apply weight to tiles to ensure full contact with concrete.
 - 4. Install anchor devices through face of tiles and into pavement using anchors located as recommended by manufacturer. Set heads of anchors flush with top surface of mat.
 - 5. Mask perimeter of tiles and adjacent concrete, and apply sealant in continuous bead around perimeter of tile installation.

6. Remove masking, adhesive, excess sealant, and soil from exposed surfaces of detectable warning tiles and surrounding concrete pavement using cleaning agents recommended in writing by manufacturer.
7. Protect installed tiles from traffic until adhesive has set.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace tactile warning surfacing that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect. Replace using tactile warning surfacing installation methods acceptable to Architect.
- B. Protect tactile warning surfacing from damage and maintain free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material.

END OF SECTION 321726

SECTION 321813 - SYNTHETIC GRASS SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Synthetic grass surfacing.
2. Coordination of all work activities and Owner's contractor associated with the synthetic grass surfacing.
3. Subsurface field materials and systems including, geotextile membrane, gravel drainage layer, drainage pipe, accessories, and connection to the storm water system.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation, compaction, and grading of subbase.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference:** Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:** For each type of product specified.

- B. Shop Drawings:** For synthetic grass surfacing.

1. Include sections and details of edge treatments, attachments, storm water system, and system component layers.
2. Show locations of seams and method of seaming.

- C. Samples:** For each type of synthetic grass surfacing indicated.

1. Turf Fabric: 12 inches square.
2. Infill Material: 4 oz. of each type.
3. Shock-Attenuation Pad: 12 inches square.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:** For Installer.

- B. Product Test Reports:** For each synthetic grass surfacing assembly.

- C. Sample Warranties:** For special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data:** For synthetic grass surfacing, including maintenance cleaning instructions, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Infill: Sufficient quantity for 100 sq. ft., in weatherproof bags.
 - 2. Seaming Tape and Adhesive: Sufficient quantity for 100 sq. ft.
 - 3. One new set of maintenance tools, of type recommended by synthetic grass surfacing manufacturer for installation.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing synthetic turf surfacing materials similar to those specified for this project, with a record of successful service for a minimum of 5 years.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials in location and manner to allow installation of synthetic grass surfacing without excess disturbance of granular base.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of synthetic turf surfacing with installation of site paving, adjacent lawns, landscaping materials, site lighting, and related work.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace synthetic grass surfacing that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration and excessive wear.
 - b. Deterioration from UV light.
 - c. Excessive loss of shock attenuation.
 - d. Seam separation, including game lines and markings.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Minimum 8 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Turf Fabric: Turf fabric tested in accordance with the following methods, with additional test method conditions for each method in accordance with ASTM F1551.
 - 1. Tuft Bind: Not less than 8 lbf in accordance with ASTM D1335.
 - 2. Breaking Strength: Minimum 200 lbf in accordance with ASTM D5034.
- B. Synthetic Turf Playing Surfaces: Values for shock attenuation, measured by maximum

deceleration, or G(max), vary among manufacturers and systems.

1. Shock Attenuation: No greater than 200 G(max) and Head Injury Criteria (HIC) not exceeding 1,000 at time of installation in accordance with ASTM F1292.
- C. Permeability: Minimum 15 inches per hour of rainfall capacity in accordance with ASTM F2898 or EN 15330-1.
- D. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for recreation surfaces.
1. Provide synthetic turf system meeting requirements of ASTM F1951.

2.2 SYNTHETIC GRASS SURFACING

- A. Synthetic Grass Surfacing for Landscaping: Complete surfacing system, consisting of synthetic yarns bound to water-permeable backing and infill indicated, suitable for playgrounds.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements provide SYNLawn Play Premium by SYNLawn, Dalton GA 30721; (866) 796-5296. Manufacturers offering comparable products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Challenger Turf, Inc.
 - b. FieldTurf, a Tarkett Sports Company
 - c. XGrass
- B. Synthetic Turf Surfacing: Complete surfacing system, consisting of delustered UV-stabilized antimicrobial synthetic yarns bound to water-permeable bio-based primary and secondary backing. IPEMA-certified. Non-abrasive blades with low surface temperature. Anti-Static and Ultra Violet reflective pigment-enhanced.
1. Basis of Design Product: **SYNLawn Play Premium.**
 2. Artificial Turf Fiber and Construction Characteristics:
 - a. Yarn, Turf Zone: Polyethylene; high-emissivity omega shape.
 - 1) Color: Field green + apple.
 - 2) Denier, ASTM D1577: 10,800/6.
 - 3) Antimicrobial Protection: Sanitized®
 - 4) Antistatic Protection: StatBlock™
 - 5) IR Reflective: DualChill™
 - b. Yarn, Thatch Zone: Polyethylene.
 - 1) Color: Field green + beige.
 - 2) Denier: 5,000/8.
 - c. Finished Pile Height, ASTM D5823: 1 ½ inch.
 - d. Face Weight, ASTM D5848: 80 oz/sq. yd.
 - e. Tuft Machine Gauge: 3/8 inch.
 - f. Backing, Primary: 6 oz./sq. yd. 15/18 polypropylene, 2 layers with fiber-reinforcing core.

- g. Backing, Secondary: 22 oz. /sq. yd. bio-based urethane.
 - 1) Enviroloc+™
 - a) Anti Fungi and Anti Algae blended into secondary backing.
 - h. Total Weight: 108 oz./sq. yd.
 - i. Infill: Silica sand ballast.
3. Performance Characteristics:
- a. Tuft Bind, ASTM D1335: Not less than 8 lb.
 - b. Grab tear strength, ASTM D5034: Not less than 200 lbf.
 - c. Elongation to break, ASTM D2256: Not less than 30 percent.
 - d. Yarn breaking strength, ASTM D5793: Not less than 20 lb.
 - e. Flammability, ASTM D2859: Pass.
 - f. Fire Test Exposure, ASTM E108: Class A.
 - g. Heavy Metal Analysis, EN71-3

2.3 SUPPLEMENTARY TURF SURFACING MATERIALS

- A. Fall Pad: Rubber, lead, and heavy metal-free non-degradeable porous elastic pad, with permeability of not less than that of specified artificial turf surfacing, composed of 100 percent recycled non-contaminated post-industrial closed cell polyethylene foam, geotextile weed barrier faced on one side.
 - 1. Product: Brock Powerbase Play
 - 2. Pad Thickness: Minimum 1-1/8 inch.
 - 3. IPEMA Fall Height, ASTM F1292: Minimum 8 feet.
 - 4. Accessibility, ASTM F1951: Passes.
 - 5. Rainfall Capacity, ASTM F1551: Not less than 30 inches per hour.
- B. Turf Spikes: Manufacturer's approved fasteners.
- C. Nailer Board: Manufacturer's approved nailer/edger board.
- D. Curbing: Concrete curbing as required for installation.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Sand Infill: Uniformly sized silica sand free of silts, clays, and contaminants, and of subangular or rounder shape in accordance with ASTM F1632; mesh size as recommended by synthetic grass surfacing manufacturer.
- B. Glue, Seaming Fabric, and Thread: As recommended by manufacturer for application.

2.5 GEOTEXTILE FABRIC

- A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
 - 1. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament or woven, monofilament or multifilament.
 - 2. Style(s): Flat and sock.

2.6 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Perforated:

1. PE Pipe and Fittings:
 - a. NPS 4: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
 - b. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.
2. Perforated PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2729, bell-and-spigot ends, for loose joints.

2.7 GRAVEL DRAINAGE LAYER

- A. Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; with gradation as required by the grass surfacing manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine synthetic turf surfacing base and perimeter conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify substrate meets profile required.
 2. Confirm base material, compaction of substrate, permeability, and drainage system installation meets requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SUBBASE PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare substrates to receive surfacing products according to synthetic turf surfacing manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that substrates are sound and without high spots, ridges, holes, and depressions. Remove organic debris. Grade soil subgrade level and compact.
- B. Finish grade soil subgrade with slope between 0.5 percent and 1.0 percent toward path of site drainage.
1. Compact subgrade in both directions with mechanical compacting equipment to achieve specified compaction at 90 percent standard Proctor.
 2. Prepare subgrade to tolerance of within 0.5 inch of design grade.
 3. Prepare subgrade within 0.25 inch in 10 feet in any direction from design grade over entire playing surface.
- C. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated
- D. Wrap all drainage trenches with geotextile fabric and install drainage according to turf manufacturer's design and connect the field drainage system to the storm water system as indicated on the drawings.

- E. Cover the entire sub-grade with geotextile fabric.
- F. Install a minimum of 4" base course gravel and 2" fine gravel base across the sub-grade to a tolerance of +/- 0.5" across the entire field, with variations of less than 0.25" in any 10 lineal feet.
 - 1. Indentations caused by equipment, foot traffic or movement of turf shall be hand raked, leveled, rolled, and eliminated before each successive piece of turf is installed.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SYNTHETIC GRASS SURFACING

- A. General: Comply with synthetic turf surfacing manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install synthetic turf surfacing over area and in thickness indicated.
- B. Fall Pad: Place fall pads tightly abutted over area to receive synthetic turf surfacing. Tape seams with pad seam tape to secure pads in position prior to installing synthetic turf.
- C. Artificial Turf: Loose-lay artificial turf and allow fabric to relax for period recommended by manufacturer. Stretch carpet and attach at perimeter in accordance with approved submittals.
- D. Seaming: Form seams flat and snug, with no gaps or fraying. Remove yarns that are trapped within seams. Form seams as recommended in synthetic turf manufacturer's written instructions using manufacturer's provided or recommended materials.
- E. Attachment: Attach turf fabric to perimeter restraint system as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLTION, INFILL

- A. Mix and install infill material components in accordance with manufacturer's requirements for approved system. Groom material and leave surface ready for use.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect completed installation from damage. Prevent traffic over system prior to acceptance by Owner.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct Owner's personnel in proper inspection and maintenance of synthetic turf surfacing. Review manufacturer's recommended maintenance procedures and warranty terms and conditions.

END OF SECTION 321813

SECTION 323113 - VINYL FENCING AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Privacy Fence.
2. Post Caps.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete post footings.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:

1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
3. Installation methods.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

- C. Samples: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm engaged in the manufacture of vinyl fence and gates of types and sizes specified, and whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for a minimum of five years.

- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm with a minimum of two years of successful installation experience with projects utilizing vinyl fence and gates similar in type and scope to that required for this Project.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to the Project site in manufacturer's original wrappings and containers, labeled with supplier's or manufacturer's name, material or product brand name, and lot number, if any.

- B. Store materials in their original, undamaged packages and containers, inside a well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Lifetime Limited, Non-Prorated Warranty on Material and 5 Year Prorated Labor Warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design: Key-Link Fencing & Railing and Superior Plastic Products, which is located at: 260 Jalyn Dr.; New Holland, PA 17557; Toll Free Tel: 800-633-7093; Fax: 717-355-7129; Email: request info (aalvarez@superiorplastic.net); Web: <https://superiorplasticproducts.com> | <http://KeyLinkOnline.com>

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. PVC: Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) formulated to resist impact and for Ultra Violet (UV) stabilization. Extruded products meets or exceeds ASTM D 1784.

2.3 PRIVACY FENCE

- A. Style: Cambridge Privacy Fence
 - 1. Height:
 - a. 72 inch.
 - 2. Section Width:
 - a. 8 foot.
 - 3. Cambridge Smooth:
 - a. Top and Bottom Horizontal Rails: 2 inch by 7 inch
 - b. Vertical Panels: 3/4 inch by 10 inch interlocking.
 - 4. Posts: 5 inch by 5 inch.
 - 5. Colors:
 - a. White.
- B. Vinyl Post Caps
 - 1. Size:
 - a. 5 inch Flat (White).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until conditions have been properly prepared.
- B. Verification of Conditions: Examine locations where fencing is to be installed for any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work.
- C. If preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare the grade and remove surface irregularities, if any, which may cause interference with the installation of the fence.

- C. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Set posts and gate posts for gate openings as indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Center and align posts, place concrete around posts and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Recheck vertical and top alignment of posts, and make necessary corrections.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean the work according to manufacturer's written instructions. Post hole excavations shall be scattered uniformly away from the posts. Clean fence with mild household detergent and rinse well with clean water. Remove mortar from exposed posts using a 10 percent solution of muriatic acid followed immediately by several rinses with clean water.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 323113

SECTION 323119 – ORNAMETAL FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- 1. Ornamental aluminum 'picket' fencing and gates.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete post footings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:

- 1. Manufacturer's product line of fencing and gates assembled from standard components.
- 2. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including structural analysis, preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.

- 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to comply with performance requirements.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain ornamental fences and gates from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Performance: Fencing shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under normal use conditions:
 1. Completed panels shall be capable of supporting a 200 lb. load (applied at midspan) without permanent deformation.
 2. Panels shall be biasable to a 12.5% change in grade:
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

2.3 ORNAMENTAL FENCES AND GATES

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Echelon Plus, Classic 3-rail aluminum ornamental fencing with spear top manufactured by Ameristar Fence Products, Inc. or a comparable product.
 1. Height: As indicated on drawings.

2.4 GENERAL

- A. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods, including structural analysis, preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval.

- B. Metal Surfaces: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- C. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ALUMINUM

- A. Fence framework including tubular pickets, rails and posts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B221.
- B. Aluminum extrusions for posts and rails shall be Alloy and Temper Designation 6005-T52.
- C. Aluminum extrusions for pickets shall be Alloy and Temper Designation 6063-T52.

2.6 FABRICATED COMPONENTS

- A. Fence Posts: Minimum 2-1/2 inches X 2-1/2 inches X .060 inch w/reinforced web.
- B. Gate Posts:
 - 1. For leafs up to 4':
 - a. Up to and including 4' in height: 2-1/2" x 2-1/2" x 0.060 inch aluminum.
 - b. Over 4' up to and including 5' in height: 3 inches X 3 inches X 0.120 inch aluminum.
 - c. Over 5' up to and including 6' in height: 4" x 4" x 0.250 inch aluminum or 3" x 3" x 12ga. steel.
- C. Pickets shall be 3/4" square x .045" thick. Open area between pickets shall not exceed 4 inches.
- D. Horizontal rails shall be 1-1/4" x 1-7/16" with 0.090" top wall, 0.060" thick internal web, 0.110" side walls and shall be punched to allow pickets to pass through the top of the rail. The rail shall be constructed with an internal web insert providing a raceway for the pickets to be retained with a 1/8" retaining rod.
- E. Accessories: Aluminum castings shall be used for all post caps and other miscellaneous hardware. Hinges and latches shall be fabricated from stainless steel.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
 - 1. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
 - 3. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
 - 4. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated end fittings.

- B. Pickets, rails and posts shall be pre-cut to specified lengths. Horizontal rails shall be pre-punched to accept pickets. Grommets shall be inserted into the pre-punched holes in the rails and pickets shall be inserted through the grommets so that pre-drilled picket holes align with the internal upper raceway of the rails. Retaining rods shall be inserted into each rail so that they pass through the pre-drilled holes in each picket, thus completing the panel assembly.
- C. Swing gates shall be fabricated using 1-1/4 inches x 1-7/16 inches horizontal rail, 1.75 inches sq. x .125 inches gate ends, and 3/4 inches sq. x .080 inches pickets. All rail and upright intersections shall be joined by welding. All picket and rail intersections shall also be joined by welding.
- D. Assemble fencing by fusion welding in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- E. Connections: Connect members with mechanical fasteners and fittings. Conceal fasteners to the greatest extent possible. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
- F. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Fasteners: Type 304 or Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners. Provide Phillips, square, or hex socket flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes. Provide one of the following color coated finishes.
 - 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

2. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil for primer and 0.8 mil for topcoat.
3. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 and containing not less than 50 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed line of sight between stakes.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line according to manufacturer's written installation instructions. Set fencing accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Concealed Concrete: Place top of concrete 2 inches below grade to allow covering with surface material.
- D. Line Posts: Set posts plumb and space uniformly at 96 inches o.c. or as indicated on the drawings if a closer spacing is indicated.
 1. Rake fencing to follow sloping grades. Measure post spacing dimension along the grade. Fence panels shall be attached to posts with brackets supplied by the manufacturer.
 2. Adjust posts before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints
- E. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing fencing.

1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
2. Exposed aluminum surfaces due to cutting/drilling of the rails or posts shall be sealed.
 - a. Remove all metal shavings from cut area.
 - b. Apply custom finish paint matching fence color.

3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.
- C. Clean the jobsite of excess materials. Post hole excavations shall be scattered uniformly away from posts.

END OF SECTION 323119

SECTION 329113 - SOIL PREPARATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes planting soils specified by composition of the mixes.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for topsoil stripping and stockpiling.
 - 2. Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" for placing planting soil for turf and grasses.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AAPFCO: Association of American Plant Food Control Officials.
- B. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation. This can be amended or unamended soil as indicated.
- C. CEC: Cation exchange capacity.
- D. Compost: The product resulting from the controlled biological decomposition of organic material that has been sanitized through the generation of heat and stabilized to the point that it is beneficial to plant growth.
- E. Duff Layer: A surface layer of soil, typical of forested areas, that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.
- F. Imported Soil: Soil that is transported to Project site for use.
- G. Layered Soil Assembly: A designed series of planting soils, layered on each other that together produce an environment for plant growth.
- H. Manufactured Soil: Soil produced by blending soils, sand, stabilized organic soil amendments, and other materials to produce planting soil.
- I. NAPT: North American Proficiency Testing Program. An SSSA program to assist soil-, plant-, and water-testing laboratories through interlaboratory sample exchanges and statistical evaluation of analytical data.
- J. Organic Matter: The total of organic materials in soil exclusive of undecayed plant and animal tissues, their partial decomposition products, and the soil biomass; also called "humus" or "soil organic matter."
- K. Planting Soil: Existing, on-site soil; imported soil; or manufactured soil that has been modified as specified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.

- L. RCRA Metals: Hazardous metals identified by the EPA under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.
- M. SSSA: Soil Science Society of America.
- N. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.
- O. Subsoil: Soil beneath the level of subgrade; soil beneath the topsoil layers of a naturally occurring soil profile, typified by less than 1 percent organic matter and few soil organisms.
- P. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile. In undisturbed areas, surface soil is typically called "topsoil"; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- Q. USCC: U.S. Composting Council.

1.4 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction soil analyses on existing, on-site soil and or imported soil.
- B. Preconstruction Soil Analyses: For each unamended soil type, perform testing on soil samples and furnish soil analysis and a written report containing soil-amendment and fertilizer recommendations by a qualified testing agency performing the testing according to "Soil-Sampling Requirements" and "Testing Requirements" articles.
 - 1. Have testing agency identify and label samples and test reports according to sample collection and labeling requirements.

1.5 SOIL-SAMPLING REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Extract soil samples according to requirements in this article.
- B. Sample Collection and Labeling: Have samples taken and labeled by Contractor in presence of Owner or state-certified, -licensed, or -registered soil scientist under the direction of the testing agency.
 - 1. Number and Location of Samples: Minimum of three representative soil samples from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for landscaping purposes.
 - 2. Procedures and Depth of Samples: According to USDA-NRCS's "Field Book for Describing and Sampling Soils."
 - 3. Division of Samples: Split each sample into two, equal parts. Send half to the testing agency and half to Owner for its records.
 - 4. Labeling: Label each sample with the date, location keyed to a site plan or other location system, visible soil condition, and sampling depth.

1.6 TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Perform tests on soil samples according to requirements in this article.
- B. Physical Testing:

1. Soil Texture: Soil-particle, size-distribution analysis by one of the following methods according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods":
 - a. Sieving Method: Report sand-gradation percentages for very coarse, coarse, medium, fine, and very fine sand; and fragment-gradation (gravel) percentages for fine, medium, and coarse fragments; according to USDA sand and fragment sizes.
 - b. Hydrometer Method: Report percentages of sand, silt, and clay.
 2. Total Porosity: Calculate using particle density and bulk density according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods."
 3. Water Retention: According to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods."
 4. Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity: According to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods"; at 85% compaction according to ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor).
- C. Chemical Testing:
1. CEC: Analysis by sodium saturation at pH 7 according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 3- Chemical Methods."
 2. Clay Mineralogy: Analysis and estimated percentage of expandable clay minerals using CEC by ammonium saturation at pH 7 according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1- Physical and Mineralogical Methods."
 3. Metals Hazardous to Human Health: Test for presence and quantities of RCRA metals including aluminum, arsenic, barium, copper, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If RCRA metals are present, include recommendations for corrective action.
 4. Phytotoxicity: Test for plant-available concentrations of phytotoxic minerals including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chlorides, chromium, cobalt, copper, lead, lithium, mercury, nickel, selenium, silver, sodium, strontium, tin, titanium, vanadium, and zinc.
- D. Fertility Testing: Soil-fertility analysis according to standard laboratory protocol of nationally recognized, procedures including the following:
1. Percentage of organic matter.
 2. CEC, calcium percent of CEC, and magnesium percent of CEC.
 3. Soil reaction (acidity/alkalinity pH value).
 4. Buffered acidity or alkalinity.
 5. Nitrogen ppm.
 6. Phosphorous ppm.
 7. Potassium ppm.
 8. Manganese ppm.
 9. Manganese-availability ppm.
 10. Zinc ppm.
 11. Zinc availability ppm.
 12. Copper ppm.
 13. Sodium ppm.
 14. Soluble-salts ppm.
 15. Presence and quantities of problem materials including salts and metals cited in the Standard protocol. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.
 16. Other deleterious materials, including their characteristics and content of each.

- E. Organic-Matter Content: Analysis using loss-by-ignition method according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 3- Chemical Methods."
- F. Recommendations: Based on the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants indicated. Include, at a minimum, recommendations for nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium fertilization, and for micronutrients.
 - 1. Fertilizers and Soil Amendment Rates: State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. for 6-inch depth of soil.
 - 2. Soil Reaction: State the recommended liming rates for raising pH or sulfur for lowering pH according to the buffered acidity or buffered alkalinity in weight per 1000 sq. ft. for 6-inch depth of soil.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and compliance with state and Federal laws if applicable.
- B. Bulk Materials:
 - 1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
 - 2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
 - 3. Do not move or handle materials when they are wet or frozen.
 - 4. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANTING SOILS SPECIFIED BY COMPOSITION

- A. Existing, on-site surface soil, with the duff layer, if any, retained; and stockpiled on-site; blended and modified to produce viable planting soil.
- B. Imported, naturally formed soil from off-site sources and consisting of sandy loam loam silt loam loamy sand or sand soil according to USDA textures; blended and modified to produce viable planting soil.
 - 1. Sources: Take imported, unamended soil from sources that are naturally well-drained sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches deep, not from agricultural land, bogs, or marshes; and that do not contain undesirable organisms; disease-causing plant pathogens; or obnoxious weeds and invasive plants including, but not limited to, quackgrass, Johnsongrass, poison ivy, nutsedge, nimblewill, Canada thistle, bindweed, bentgrass, wild garlic, ground ivy, perennial sorrel, and brome grass.
 - 2. Unacceptable Properties: Clean soil of the following:
 - a. Unacceptable Materials: Concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials that are harmful to plant growth.

- b. Unsuitable Materials: Stones, roots, plants, sod, clay lumps, and pockets of coarse sand that exceed a combined maximum of 8 percent by dry weight of the imported soil.
 - c. Large Materials: Stones, clods, roots, clay lumps, and pockets of coarse sand exceeding 2 inches in any dimension.
 3. Amended Soil Composition: Blend imported, unamended soil with recommended soil amendments and fertilizers to produce planting soil.
- C. Manufactured soil consisting of manufacturer's basic topsoil, blended in a manufacturing facility with sand, stabilized organic soil amendments, and other materials to produce viable planting soil.
 1. Additional Properties of Manufacturer's Basic Soil before Amending: Soil reaction of pH 6 to 7 and minimum of 2 percent organic-matter content, friable, and with sufficient structure to give good tilth and aeration.
 2. Unacceptable Properties: Manufactured soil shall not contain the following:
 - a. Unacceptable Materials: Concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials that are harmful to plant growth.
 - b. Unsuitable Materials: Stones, roots, plants, sod, clay lumps, and pockets of coarse sand that exceed a combined maximum of 5 percent by dry weight of the manufactured soil.
 - c. Large Materials: Stones, clods, roots, clay lumps, and pockets of coarse sand exceeding 1-1/2 inches in any dimension.

2.2 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
 1. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through a No. 8 sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through a No. 60 sieve.
 2. Class: O, with a minimum of 95 percent passing through a No. 8 sieve and a minimum of 55 percent passing through a No. 60 sieve.
 3. Form: Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone, calcitic limestone, or mollusk shells.
- B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, and containing a minimum of 90 percent elemental sulfur, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through a No. 6 sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through a No. 40 sieve.
- C. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.
- D. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
- E. Agricultural Gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through a No. 50 sieve.
- F. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials, and according to ASTM C 33/C 33M.

2.3 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter produced by composting feedstock, and bearing USCC's "Seal of Testing Assurance," and as follows:
 - 1. Reaction: pH of 5.5 to 8.
 - 2. Soluble-Salt Concentration: Less than 4 dS/m.
 - 3. Moisture Content: 35 to 55 percent by weight.
 - 4. Organic-Matter Content: 30 to 40 percent of dry weight.
 - 5. Particle Size: Minimum of 98 percent passing through a 1-inch sieve.
- B. Sphagnum Peat: Partially decomposed sphagnum peat moss, finely divided or of granular texture with 100 percent passing through a 1/2-inch sieve, a pH of 3.4 to 4.8, and a soluble-salt content measured by electrical conductivity of maximum 5 dS/m.
- C. Muck Peat: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture with 100 percent passing through a 1/2-inch sieve, a pH of 6 to 7.5, a soluble-salt content measured by electrical conductivity of maximum 5 dS/m, having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent, and containing no sand.
- D. Wood Derivatives: Shredded and composted, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture and free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
 - 1. Partially Decomposed Wood Derivatives: In lieu of shredded and composted wood derivatives, mix shredded and partially decomposed wood derivatives with ammonium nitrate at a minimum rate of 0.15 lb/cu. ft. of loose sawdust or ground bark, or with ammonium sulfate at a minimum rate of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. of loose sawdust or ground bark.
- E. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, debris, and material harmful to plant growth.

2.4 FERTILIZERS

- A. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; a minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.
- B. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:
 - 1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified testing agency.
- C. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
 - 1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified testing agency.
- D. Chelated Iron: Commercial-grade FeEDDHA for dicots and woody plants, and commercial-grade FeDTPA for ornamental grasses and monocots.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Place planting soil and fertilizers according to requirements in other Specification Sections.
- B. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in planting soil.
- C. Proceed with placement only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION OF UNAMENDED, ON-SITE SOIL BEFORE AMENDING

- A. Excavation: Excavate soil from designated area(s) to a depth of 6 inches and stockpile until amended.
- B. Unacceptable Materials: Clean soil of concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials that are harmful to plant growth.
- C. Unsuitable Materials: Clean soil to contain a maximum of 8 percent by dry weight of stones, roots, plants, sod, clay lumps, and pockets of coarse sand.
- D. Screening: Pass unamended soil through a 2-inch sieve to remove large materials.

3.3 PLACING AND MIXING PLANTING SOIL OVER EXPOSED SUBGRADE

- A. General: Apply and mix unamended soil with amendments on-site to produce required planting soil. Do not apply materials or till if existing soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
- B. Subgrade Preparation: Till subgrade to a minimum depth of 6 inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
 - 1. Apply, add soil amendments, and mix approximately half the thickness of unamended soil over prepared, loosened subgrade according to "Mixing" Paragraph below. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
- C. Mixing: Spread unamended soil to total depth of 6 inches, but not less than required to meet finish grades after mixing with amendments and natural settlement. Do not spread if soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
 - 1. Amendments: Apply soil amendments, except compost, and fertilizer, if required, evenly on surface, and thoroughly blend them with unamended soil to produce planting soil.
 - a. Mix lime and sulfur with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
 - b. Mix fertilizer with planting soil no more than seven days before planting.
- D. Compaction: Compact each blended lift of planting soil to 75 to 82 percent of maximum Standard Proctor density according to ASTM D 698 and tested in-place.

- E. Finish Grading: Grade planting soil to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

3.4 PLACING MANUFACTURED PLANTING SOIL OVER EXPOSED SUBGRADE

- A. General: Apply manufactured soil on-site in its final, blended condition. Do not apply materials or till if existing soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
- B. Subgrade Preparation: Till subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
 - 1. Apply approximately half the thickness of planting soil over prepared, loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
- C. Application: Spread planting soil to total depth of 6 inches, but not less than required to meet finish grades after natural settlement. Do not spread if soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
- D. Compaction: Compact each lift of planting soil to 75 to 82 percent of maximum Standard Proctor density according to ASTM D 698.
- E. Finish Grading: Grade planting soil to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

3.5 BLENDING PLANTING SOIL IN PLACE

- A. General: Mix amendments with in-place, unamended soil to produce required planting soil. Do not apply materials or till if existing soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
- B. Preparation: Till unamended, existing soil in planting areas to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- C. Mixing: Apply soil amendments, except compost, and fertilizer, if required, evenly on surface, and thoroughly blend them into full depth of unamended, in-place soil to produce planting soil.
 - 1. Mix lime and sulfur with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
 - 2. Mix fertilizer with planting soil no more than seven days before planting.
- D. Compaction: Compact blended planting soil to 75 to 82 percent of maximum Standard Proctor density according to ASTM D 698.
- E. Finish Grading: Grade planting soil to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

3.6 APPLYING COMPOST TO SURFACE OF PLANTING SOIL

- A. Application: Apply compost component of planting-soil mix to surface of in-place planting soil. Do not apply materials or till if existing soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
- B. Finish Grading: Grade surface to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Soil will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protection Zone: Identify protection zones according to Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- B. Protect areas of in-place soil from additional compaction, disturbance, and contamination. Prohibit the following practices within these areas except as required to perform planting operations:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Vehicle traffic.
 - 4. Foot traffic.
 - 5. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 6. Impoundment of water.
 - 7. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
- C. If planting soil or subgrade is overcompacted, disturbed, or contaminated by foreign or deleterious materials or liquids, remove the planting soil and contamination; restore the subgrade as directed by Architect and replace contaminated planting soil with new planting soil.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Protect areas adjacent to planting-soil preparation and placement areas from contamination. Keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable materials, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property unless otherwise indicated.

END OF SECTION 329113

SECTION 329200 - TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Seeding.
 - 2. Hydroseeding.
 - 3. Turf renovation.
 - 4. Erosion-control material(s).

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- B. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. Pesticides include insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. They also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
- C. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. Pests include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
- D. Planting Soil: Existing, on-site soil; imported soil; or manufactured soil that has been modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth. See Section 329113 "Soil Preparation" and drawing designations for planting soils.
- E. Subgrade: The surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture, stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.
- B. Product Certificates: For fertilizers, from manufacturer.
- C. Pesticides and Herbicides: Product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer whose work has resulted in successful turf establishment.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of compliance with state and Federal laws, as applicable.
- B. Bulk Materials:
 - 1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
 - 2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials; discharge of soil-bearing water runoff; and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
 - 3. Accompany each delivery of bulk materials with appropriate certificates.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Planting Restrictions: Plant during the spring or fall regional planting periods. Coordinate planting periods with initial maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of planting completion.
- B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED

- A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.
 - 1. Quality: State-certified seed of grass species as listed below for solar exposure.
 - 2. Sun and Partial Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
 - a. 50 percent Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*).
 - b. 30 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
 - c. 10 percent perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*).
 - d. 10 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
 - 3. Proprietary seed mix with proven success in sun and partial shade when planted in similar regional conditions.

2.2 FERTILIZERS

- A. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
- B. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
 1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.

2.3 MULCHES

- A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.
- B. Sphagnum Peat Mulch: Partially decomposed sphagnum peat moss, finely divided or of granular texture, and with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8.
- C. Muck Peat Mulch: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent, and containing no sand.
- D. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 2 to 5 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:
 1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.
 2. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
- E. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with a maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.
- F. Nonasphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.
- G. Asphalt Emulsion: ASTM D 977, Grade SS-1; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

2.4 PESTICIDES

- A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by the EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.5 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

- A. Erosion-Control Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut-fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches long.
- B. Erosion-Control Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable burlap or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd., with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches long.
- C. Erosion-Control Mats: Cellular, nonbiodegradable slope-stabilization mats designed to isolate and contain small areas of soil over steeply sloped surface, of 3-inch nominal mat thickness. Include manufacturer's recommended anchorage system for slope conditions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting installation and performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
 - 2. Suspend planting operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
 - 3. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable or which is dusty.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures; utilities; sidewalks; pavements; and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.
 - 1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding and hydromulching overspray.
 - 2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.
- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TURF AREA PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare planting area for soil placement and mix planting soil according to Section 329113 "Soil Preparation."
- B. Placing Planting Soil: Place and mix planting soil in place over exposed subgrade or blend planting soil in place as conditions require.

1. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.

- C. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
- D. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.4 PREPARATION FOR EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

- A. Prepare area as specified in "Turf Area Preparation" Article.
- B. For erosion-control mats, install planting soil in two lifts, with second lift equal to thickness of erosion-control mats. Install erosion-control mat and fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.
- C. Fill cells of erosion-control mat with planting soil and compact before planting.
- D. For erosion-control blanket or mesh, install from top of slope, working downward, and as recommended by material manufacturer for site conditions. Fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.
- E. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

3.5 SEEDING

- A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph.
 - 1. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
 - 2. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
 - 3. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.
- B. Sow seed at a total rate of 3 to 4 lb/1000 sq. ft..
- C. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.
- D. Protect seeded areas with slopes exceeding 1:4 with erosion-control blankets and 1:6 with erosion-control fiber mesh installed and stapled according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Protect seeded areas with erosion-control mats where indicated on Drawings; install and anchor according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Protect seeded areas with slopes not exceeding 1:6 by spreading straw mulch. Spread uniformly to form a continuous blanket in loose thickness over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.
- G. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying compost mulch or peat mulch within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16 inch, and roll surface smooth.

3.6 HYDROSEEDING

- A. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, commercial fertilizer and or slow-release fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.
 - 1. Mix slurry with fiber-mulch manufacturer's recommended tackifier.
 - 2. Spray-apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply slurry at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 1500-lb/acre dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.

3.7 TURF RENOVATION

- A. Renovate existing turf where indicated.
- B. Renovate turf damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles.
 - 1. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.
 - 2. Install new planting soil as required.
- C. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.
- D. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials, such as oil drippings, fuel spills, stones, gravel, and other construction materials resulting from Contractor's operations, and replace with new planting soil.
- E. Mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake existing turf.
- F. Remove weeds before seeding. Where weeds are extensive, apply selective herbicides as required. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.
- G. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- H. Till stripped, bare, and compacted areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 6 inches.
- I. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizer required for establishing new turf and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of existing soil. Install new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.
 - 1. Soil Amendment(s): according to requirements of Section 329113 "Soil Preparation."
 - 2. Initial Fertilizer: Commercial fertilizer or Slow-release fertilizer applied according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- J. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch as required for new turf.
- K. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

3.8 TURF MAINTENANCE

- A. General: Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll,

regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.

1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
2. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
3. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.

B. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.

1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than one-third of grass height. Remove no more than one-third of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:

1. Mow to a height of 1-1/2 to 2 inches.

D. Turf Postfertilization: Apply commercial fertilizer or slow-release fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.

1. Use fertilizer that provides actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. to turf area.

3.9 SATISFACTORY TURF

A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:

1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10 sq. ft. and bare spots not exceeding 5 by 5 inches.
2. Satisfactory Plugged Turf: At end of maintenance period, the required number of plugs has been established as well-rooted, viable patches of grass, and areas between plugs are free of weeds and other undesirable vegetation.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements, and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

3.10 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

- B. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Nonselective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.11 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

- A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- C. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.
- D. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

3.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in "Turf Maintenance" Article. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established, but for not less than the following periods:
 - 1. Seeded Turf: 60 days from date of substantial completion.
 - a. When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or if turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.

END OF SECTION 329200

SECTION 334600 - SUBDRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Perforated-wall pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Geotextile filter fabrics.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Drainage conduits, including rated capacities.
 - 2. Geotextile filter fabrics.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORATED-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:
 - 1. NPS 6 and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
 - 2. NPS 8 and Larger: ASTM F 667; AASHTO M 252, Type CP; or AASHTO M 294, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
 - 3. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.
- B. Perforated PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2729, bell-and-spigot ends, for loose joints.

2.2 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Soil materials are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

2.3 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRICS

- A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
- B. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament.
 - 1. Survivability: AASHTO M 288 Class 2.
 - 2. Styles: Flat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and areas for suitable conditions where subdrainage systems are to be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.3 FOUNDATION DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Place impervious fill material on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing after concrete footing forms have been removed. Place and compact impervious fill to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches deep and 12 inches wide.
- B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.
- D. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for foundation subdrainage.
- E. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
- F. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches of finish grade.
- G. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.
- H. Place backfill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Final backfill to finish elevations and slope away from building.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.
 - 1. Foundation Subdrainage: Install piping level and with a minimum cover of 36 inches unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
 - 3. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.

- B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join perforated PE pipe and fittings with couplings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose banded, coupled, or push-on joints.
- B. Join perforated PVC sewer pipe and fittings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose bell-and-spigot, push-on joints.
- C. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.

3.6 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Cleanouts for Foundation Subdrainage:
 - 1. Install cleanouts from piping to grade. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
 - 2. In nonvehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 PVC pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 12 by 12 by 4 inches deep. Set top of cleanout 1 inch above grade.
 - 3. Comply with requirements for concrete specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to building's solid-wall-piping storm drainage system.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing drainage course to top of piping, test drain piping with water to ensure free flow before backfilling.
 - 2. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.
- B. Drain piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 334600